

اللغة العربية وقواعدها

ARABIC

LANGUAGE and GRAMMAR

تأليف

by

الدكتور، يوحانان كاپليواتزكي

Dr. JOCHANAN KAPLIWATZKY

روبین ماس / القدس

RUBIN MASS / JERUSALEM

PREFACE

This book is the first in a series of books which I am about to publish. for English students who wish to learn the Arabic language thoroughly and by an easy method.

This book is the result of many years of experience that I acquired in the instruction of Semitic languages generally and of the Arabic language particularly*).

It is the result of the scientific books that I wrote in the Oriental Institute of the Vienna University and in the Semitic-Islamic Institute of the Berlin University**), and of the Arabic school-books which I published for Hebrew students in Palestine***).

The aim of this book and of those which will follow it is to guide the beginner from the alphabet to a full knowledge of the Arabic language without subjecting him to any undue difficulty and without burdening the grammatical rules with terms and explanations that often cause much difficulty to the layman in matters philological.

In the very first lesson of this book the beginner will start reading with all the vowels and will go on thus till page 56. It is only there that he will find the list of the Arabic alphabet in its proper order. By then he will have learned all the rules pertaining to correct Arabic reading.

In the pages 1-55 only the lessons 5, 7, 8, 9, 11, 12, 14, 15,

*) 1922-1930 in Vienna, 1931-1933 in Berlin and from 1934 in Palestine.

**) 1. Scientific Grammar of the Arabic Language, 1928

2. Translation of the Hamurapi Laws (from the original), 1930

3. Scientific Grammar of the Syrian (Aramaic) Language, 1932

4. Translation of the manuscript of the Arabic Commentary on the Mishna of Maimonides (the Tractates Baba-Qama and Baba-Mesi'a), 1933

5. A dictionary and notes to the philosophical book *Dalalat al-Ha'iqin* of Maimonides, 1932-3

***) 1. The Arabic Language and Grammar, part I, 1937
(A new edition is under press)

2. " " " part II, 1938

3. The Arabic Script, 1938

4. The Arabic Verb and its Conjugations, 1938

5. Palestinian Colloquial Arabic, part I, 1939

6. Selected Pieces of the Arabic Prose, 1939



All rights reserved

Copyright by Rubin Mass, Jerusalem

Printed in Israel

Hemed Press, Jerusalem

17, 18, 19, 20 and 22 are to be translated from Arabic into English and vice versa; the other lessons in the above pages are only reading lessons and are not to be translated.

From the 57th page onward each grammatical lesson is followed by one, two or three reading lessons composed of texts which are to be translated from Arabic into English and vice versa. The subject matter of these exercises always accords with the preceding grammatical lesson and each of the above texts is followed by an Arabic-English Vocabulary, in which the new words of the text are given.

In these vocabularies I often inserted notes referring to the syntax of the Arabic language in order to explain the structure of the Arabic sentence.

At the end of this book an English-Arabic Vocabulary is appended which contains all the words found in the texts that are to be translated from English into Arabic.

Of the verb I have given in this book only the Past and Imperfect (= future and present in the European sense). These were but superficially explained in lessons 11, 17 and 19 in order to facilitate the use of the verb in the texts of this book also. The verb will be fully dealt with in the next book of this series, which is to be published in the very near future.

As a parting word may I draw the beginner's special attention to notes 3 — 5 on page 1 which refer to the correct pronunciation of the Arabic vowels **a, i, u**.

In order to help the student in the study of this book, a key is likewise appended to it.

At the end of this preface I wish to express my sincerest thanks to Mr. Mordecai Zlotnik M.A., at present Programme Assistant (Hebrew Talks) at the Palestine Broadcasting Service, who put at my disposition his wide knowledge of the English, Arabic and Hebrew languages in reading the proofs and in advising me as to the English presentation of the present book.

JERUSALEM,

J. KAPLOWATZKY

Grammatical Contents

	page
The pronunciation of the Arabic vowels a, i, u	1
The short vowels (.....)	1
Sukūn (.....)	3
Tanwīn (.....)	4
The long vowels (.....)	10
Tashdīd (.....)	11
Accent	12
The Tanwīn (.....)	17
Hamza (.....)	19
The long vowel ā expressed by ¹	27
The past	28
Tā-Marbuta (.....)	31
Madda (.....)	32
Hamzat-l-wasl (.....)	40
Imperfect (= present and future in the European sense)	48
Alif Maqṣūra (.....)	52
The list of the alphabet	56
The definite article	57
The indefinite article	57
The cases	61
Feminine	75
Dual	78

First Lesson

	page
Plural	90
Broken plural	99
The Tanwīn-less nouns	109
Possessive pronouns	115
Adjective	124
The cardinal numbers	129
The ordinal numbers	139
English-Arabic Vocabulary	147—168
KEY	

ب (b) (1) بيب (bb) (2)

ب (ba) (3) ب (bi) (4) ب (bu) (5)

بيب (babubi) (6) بيب (bubiba) (7) بيب (bubabi)

بيب (bibabu) (8) بيب (bibuba) (9) بيب (bibabi)

بيب - بيب - بيب - بيب - بيب - بيب

(1) The letter **b** (ب) is designated by a point under it.

(2) The letter **b** is written ب only at the end of a word. But at the beginning of a word, or in the middle of it, it is shortened thus بيب (bb).

(3) The vowel **a** is pronounced in Arabic like the vowel **a** in the English words : farm, father.

(4) The vowel **i** is pronounced in Arabic like the vowel **i** in the English words : pin, fit, bring.

(5) The vowel **u** is pronounced in Arabic like the vowel **u** in the English words : push, pull.

(6) In Arabic there are three short vowels and three long vowels. The short vowels are :

1. ا (a) (ba. A small diagonal stroke over the consonant.)

2. إ (i) (bi. A small diagonal stroke under the consonant.)

3. أ (u) (bu. The sign over the consonant.)

For the long vowels see page 10 (19).

ت (t)

ت (ti) ت (tu)

تت (tati) تت (tuti)

تبت (bati) تبت (babi)

تبت (tati) تبت (tati)

تبت تبت تبت تبت تبت

تبت — تبت — تبت — تبت — تبت

تبت — تبت — تبت — تبت — تبت

ث (th)

ث (th) ث (th)

ثبت (bathi) ثبت (bathi)

(7) The letter ث (ت) is designated by two points above it.

(8) The letter ث is pronounced in Arabic like th in the

English words : **thank**, **think**.

ثبت (bathi) ثبت (bathi)

ثبت (bathi) ثبت (bathi)

ثبت ثبت ثبت ثبت ثبت

ثبت — ثبت — ثبت — ثبت — ثبت

ثبت — ثبت — ثبت — ثبت — ثبت

ن (n)

نن (nani)

نبت (nabi) نبت (nabi)

نبت (nabi) نبت (nabi)

(9) The letter ن is written ن only at the end of a word. But

at the beginning of a word, or in the middle of it, it is shortened thus نن (nani).

(10) Whenever a consonant is without any vowel, it receives the sign ° above it. For example : نبت (nabi), نبت (nabi).

This sign, which indicates the absence of any vowel, is called in Arabic **Sukūn**.

نَبِينٌ (nabīna) تَثِينٌ (tathīna) تَثِبٌ (tathib)

نَبَاتٌ (nabat) نَبَاتٌ (nabat) نَبَاتٌ (nabat)

نَبَاتٌ (nabat) نَبَاتٌ (nabat) نَبَاتٌ (nabat)

نَبَاتٌ (nabat) نَبَاتٌ (nabat) نَبَاتٌ (nabat)

Second Lesson

ل (la) لِّل (lil)

نَبَلٌ (nabul) نَبَلٌ (nabul) نَبَلٌ (nabul)

(11) At the end of the words, the three vowel-signs are sometimes written double, thus:

are pronounced as if the letter ن (n) was written after them. For example: نَبَاتٌ (nabat) نَبَاتٌ (nabat) نَبَاتٌ (nabat).

The sign is a shortened form of

These double-vowel signs are called in Arabic

Tawwīn. See page 17 (43).

لَبَنٌ (labun) لَبَنٌ (labun) لَبَنٌ (labun)

لَبَنٌ (labun) لَبَنٌ (labun) لَبَنٌ (labun)

لَبَنٌ (labun) لَبَنٌ (labun) لَبَنٌ (labun)

لَبَنٌ (labun) لَبَنٌ (labun) لَبَنٌ (labun)

لَبَنٌ (labun) لَبَنٌ (labun) لَبَنٌ (labun)

ك (k) كُكَاك (kukaka)

كُكَاك (kukaka) كُكَاك (kukaka) كُكَاك (kukaka)

كُكَاك (kukaka) كُكَاك (kukaka) كُكَاك (kukaka)

كُكَاك (kukaka) كُكَاك (kukaka) كُكَاك (kukaka)

(12) A small diagonal stroke over the vowel indicates that this syllable is accented

كَلْبُكَ (kalbuka) تَبْنُكَ (tibnuka)

كُتِبَ لَكَ كَلْبٌ كَتَبَنَ كَتَبْتَ

تَكْتُبُ - تَكْتُبِينَ - لَكَ - كَلْبُكَ - بِنْتُكَ -

كَلْبٌ - كَتَبَنَ - بِنِي - كُتِبَ - كَتَبْتَ -

كَتَبَ - بِنْتُكَ - لِكَلْبِكَ - ثَاكَ.

رَرَرَر (r) (r) (r) (r)

رَكِبَ تَرَكِبَ تَرَكِبَ رَكِبْتَ

رَكِبْتُ رَكِبَ رَكِبَ رَكِبْتُ

رَكَتُ رَكَتُ رَكَتُ رَكَتُ

(13) The letter ر (r) is always pronounced in Arabic like r in the English words: run, ring.

(14) The letter ر (r) cannot be joined to the following letter. For

example: رَكِبَ (rakiba).

تَرَكَ تَرَكَ تَرَكَ تَرَكَ

تَرَكَتُ - تَرَكَتُ - تَرَكَتُ - تَرَكَتُ

كَلْبٌ - بِنِي - تَرَكَ - تَرَكَتُ - تَرَكَتُ - تَرَكَتُ

تَرَكَتُ - رَكَبْتَ - بِنِي - بِنِي - بِنِي

زَزَزَز (z) (z) (z) (z)

زَلَزَلَ زَلَزَلَ زَلَزَلَ زَلَزَلَ

زَلَزَلَ زَلَزَلَ زَلَزَلَ زَلَزَلَ

زُرْتُ زُرْتُ زُرْتُ زُرْتُ

زُرْتُ زُرْتُ زُرْتُ زُرْتُ

تَرَكَتُ - زُرْتُ - تَرَكَتُ - تَرَكَتُ - تَرَكَتُ

تَرَكَتُ - تَرَكَتُ - تَرَكَتُ - تَرَكَتُ - تَرَكَتُ

تَرَكَتُ - تَرَكَتُ - تَرَكَتُ

Third Lesson

و (w) (16) و و و (wawiwu)

وَرَثَ (wārathā) (17) وَكَلَّ (wākala)

ثَوْبٌ (thawrun) ثَوْبٌ (thawrun) لَوْنٌ (lawnun)

لَوْنٌ (lawnin) ثَوْرٌ (law) ثَوْرٌ (thawrin)

وَثْبٌ (wāthaba) وَزَرَ (wāzara)

تَرَّثَ لَثَوْرٍ لَثَوْبٍ وَرَثَنَ نَزَلَ

تَرَّثَ - كَلْبِكَ - ثَوْبٌ - لَوْنٌ - ثَوْبٌ - تَرَّثَ

تَرَّثَ - تَكْتَبُ - تَكْتُبُ - وَثْبٌ - وَثْبٌ - تَبَّ

لَا - تَبَّ - تَرَّثَ - لَوْنٌ - ثَوْبٌ

(16) The letter و (w) is pronounced like the English w in the

words: wait, wonder

(17) The letter و (w) cannot be joined to the following letter. for

example: وَكَلَّ (wākala).

ي (y) (18) ي ي ي (yiyuya)

يَرَكِبُ (yārkaḥu) يَكْتُبُ (yaktubu)

يَكْتُبُ (yārkāḥu) يَرَكِبُ (yaktubu)

رَوِيَ (rāwīya) بَيْتٌ (bāyṭun) كَوِيَ (kāwīya)

بَيْتٌ (bāyṭin) يَنْزِلُ (yānzilu)

يَرِثُ يَثْبُ نَزَلَ بَيْتَكَ رَوَيْتَ

يَرِثُ - يَرِثُ - يَكْتُبُ - يَنْزِلُ - رَوَيْتَ

رَوَيْتَ - يَنْزِلُ - يَكْتُبُ - بَيْتُكَ - بَيْتُكَ

ي (y) (19) ي ي ي (mimamu)

يَكْتُبُ (bāyṭun) يَكْتُبُ (bāyṭun) يَكْتُبُ (bāyṭun)

يَكْتُبُ (bāyṭun) يَكْتُبُ (bāyṭun) يَكْتُبُ (bāyṭun)

يَكْتُبُ (bāyṭun) يَكْتُبُ (bāyṭun) يَكْتُبُ (bāyṭun)

(18) The letter ي (y) is pronounced like y in the English

words: yes, yet.

میت زوت بیت زون مهرن
 گتیبم - گتیب - زوت - متل - بیتکم
 مرگب - ورتبم - ترکبم - ترکم - تورکم
 زی (zī) زو (zū) زا (zā) باب (bābun)⁽²⁰⁾
 زار (zār) زوری (zurī) (mā)

(19) The long vowels (See above page 1 (6)) are :

1. ی (y) followed by آ (ā) ا (a) :

(11) ی (y) followed by آ (ā) ا (a) :

2. و (w) followed by ا (a) the vowel (u) followed by the letter ا (a) :

یزور (yazūru) ; یکور (yakūru)

3. ا (a) followed by the letter ا (a) which is called

in Arabic **Alif** (ā). For example کان (kāna) باب (bābun).

(bābun).

The long vowels are designated in the English transcription by a horizontal

line above them. for example کان (kāna) and are pronounced as follows:

ī like ee in feet; ū like oo in soon and ā like a in rather.

(20) The **Alif** (ā) cannot be joined to the following letter. For

example باب (bābun)

زور (zurā) زورت (zurta) یکور (yakūnu)
 بیتی (bīti) ثوری (thawrī) گونی (kūnī)
 کلپی (klpī) یزورنا زورنی (yazūrunā zuranī)
 تکورن - تکورون - تکورنی - کتانی
 باب - بانی - ثوری - کتانی - زورنی - زورنا

Fourth Lesson

(s) س (sasisu)

سلم (sallama) (sāllama) (sāllama) (sāllama)

بستان (bustān) منی (mīnī) رپی (rāpī)

(21) The sign " above a consonant indicates that the consonant is doubled. For example سلم (sallama), pronunciation, sallama, pronounced: shdakkun.

Note: سلم (sallama) is pronounced as though written رِب , سلم (sallama)

رِب = رِب.

This sign of double consonant (") is called in Arabic **Tashdīd** or **Shadda**.

(9) $\frac{1}{x^2} - \frac{1}{x^3} - \frac{1}{x^4} - \frac{1}{x^5} - \frac{1}{x^6}$

سینہ — سون — سنگ — سہی — نس

ش (sh) شش (shishusha)

(22) (sharīkun) شَرِيكُ (shāmsun) شَمْسُ

شَرِيبَت (sharība) شَرِيبَتُهَا (sharībūma)

1. In words with more than one syllable, the accent is never on the last one.

2. The last syllable but one receives the accent, if the vowel of this syllable is a long one, or if its vowel is followed by a letter with a **Sukun** (◌ْ) or with a **Tashdid** (◌ّ) over it.

For example **بستان** (bustān) **مسرور** (masrūr)

کتابت (katābta) کتابت (kalābūna).

3. When the last syllable but one does not correspond to the above-mentioned conditions, the accent falls on the last but two, when this syllable does correspond to the above. For example كَاتِبٌ (kātibūn):

(baṇḍhūmā);  (yasúrrukum).

4. In words of four or more syllables the accent is going back to the syllable which corresponds to the above. For

شُبَّاك (shubbakun) يَشْرَب (yashrābna)

شَبَابُكُ (shubbākūn) · نَشْرُودُ (nāsharū)

شیراز نشریات

سَرَبَنَّا — مَسْهِشِشٌ — مَسْهِشِشٌ — مَسْهِشِشٌ — بِرَّاسَمٍ

کاکو — سر — سکت — سکت — سکت

مَسْرُوبٌ — نَلْبَسُ — سَلَامٌ

example يَسُرُّكُمَا (yasurrukumā) يَسُرُّكُمَا

(sarārtukumā).

5. If all the syllables in the word do not correspond to the above-mentioned conditions, then the accent falls on the first syllable. For example كَتَبَ (kátaba); مَكْتَابِي (máktabāʾi).

6. The Particles **ب** (bi) **ك** (ka) **ل** (li) **ف** (fa) **وَ** (wa) and **hamza-i-wasl** (see below page 40 (39)) do not receive

the accent. For example **بِسْبَبِ** (bisṭabab) **لِسَبَبِ**

(lisdābin) كَسَبَ (kascābin) وَكَّتَ (wakāḥba) etc.

هِيَ (h) هِ (hahihu)

بَنَّا (yáhabu) وَهَبَ (wáhaba) يَهَبُ (yáhabu)

لَهُمْ (hárabu) كَلْبُهُ (kálbuhu) هَرَبَ (hárabu)

رَبِّهِ (rábbuhu) بِهِمْ (bíhim) لَهُ (láhu) هَلَا (láhu)

كَلْبُهَا (kálbuhā) كَلْبِهِمْ (kálbuhum)

هُوَ هِيَ هُنَّ لَهُ هَلَا هُمْ

لَهُنَّ كَلْبُكُمْ وَرَسَمْتُمْ رَسَامَ

كَلْبُهُ - كَرَمَهُ - كَتَابُهَا - كَلْبِهِمْ - كَلْبُنَا - بَيْتُهَا

بَيْتُهَا - هَرَبْتُ - رَأَيْتُ - وَهَبَ - وَهَبْنَا - يَهَبُ

هَلَاكَ - وَهَبْتُمْ - وَهَبْتَنِي - يُسَلِّمُ - رَبُّكَ

وَلَدَهُ - كَلْبُهَا - كَلْبُكُمْ - يُكَلِّبُنِي - دَرَسْتُ

يَدْرُسُ - دَرَسْتُ - دَرَسْتُ - دَرَسْنَا - دَرَسْتُمْ

سَرَيْتُمْ - تَرَكَيْتُمْ - مَرَكَيْتُمْ

Fifth Lesson

(read and translate)

لِي (láki) لَيْكَ (láka) لَكَ (láka) "I have" "thou (masc.) hast" "thou (fem.) hast"

لَهَا (láha) لَهِ (láhi) لَهُ (láhu) "she has" "he has" "thou (fem.) hast"

لَكُمْ (láku) لَكُمْ (láku) لَكُمْ (láku) "you (masc.) have" "you (masc.) have" "you (masc.) have"

لَهُمْ (láhum) لَهُمْ (láhum) لَهُمْ (láhum) "they (masc.) have" "they (masc.) have" "they (masc.) have"

لَهُنَّ (láhunna) لَهُنَّ (láhunna) لَهُنَّ (láhunna) "they (fem.) have" "they (fem.) have" "they (fem.) have"

Plural	Singular
"we have" لَنَا	"I have" لِي
"you (masc.) have" لَكُمْ	"thou (masc.) hast" لَكَ
"you (fem.) have" لَكُمْ	"thou (fem.) hast" لَهِ
"they (masc.) have" لَهُمْ	"he has" لَهُ
"they (fem.) have" لَهُنَّ	"she has" بَا

Translate: she has; we have; thou (fem.) hast; they (masc.) have; he has; thou (masc.) hast; they (fem.) have; I have; you (masc.) have; you (fem.) have.

(read and translate)

1. لِي بَيْتٌ وَلَكَ بَيْتٌ 2. لَنَا بَيْتٌ

3. لَهُ كَلْبٌ كَبِيرٌ وَلَهَا كَلْبٌ كَبِيرٌ

4. لَهُمْ كَلْبٌ سَمِينٌ وَلَهُمْ كَلْبٌ سَمِينٌ 5. لَنَا
بُسْتَانٌ كَبِيرٌ وَلَهُمْ كَرَمٌ كَبِيرٌ 6. لَهَا كَرَمٌ
وَلَهُ بُسْتَانٌ 7. لَكَ بُسْتَانٌ كَبِيرٌ وَكَرَمٌ كَبِيرٌ
8. كَرَمٌ وَبُسْتَانٌ 9. بَيْتٌ وَكَرَمٌ 10. لَهَا
كِتَابٌ كَبِيرٌ وَلِي كِتَابٌ كَبِيرٌ 11. لَكُمْ
كِتَابٌ وَلَهُمْ كِتَابٌ 12. لَنَا ثَوْرٌ سَمِينٌ وَلَكُنْ
ثَوْرٌ سَمِينٌ 13. لَهُ ثَوْرٌ وَلَكَ ثَوْرٌ وَكَلْبٌ.

Vocabulary: 1. بَيْتٌ "house" 2. وَ "and" (see

above page 12-13 (22)) 3. كَبِيرٌ "great"; "big"; "large" (the adjective

in Arabic comes after the noun For example: and

بَيْتٌ كَبِيرٌ 4. كَلْبٌ "dog" 5. سَمِينٌ "fat"

6. بُسْتَانٌ "garden" 7. كَرَمٌ "vineyard" 8. كِتَابٌ "book"

9. ثَوْرٌ "ox"

Translate: 1. We have a dog and they (masc.) have a

dog 2. He has a big house and she has a big garden

3. They (masc.) have a fat ox and a fat dog 4. They (masc.)

have a large vineyard and they (fem.) have a big house

5. Thou (fem.) has a book and we have a book 6. She

has a big book and they (fem.) have a big book

7. They (fem.) have a fat dog and I have a fat ox.

Sixth Lesson

دَدَدُ (d) دَدَدُ (dadidu)

دَارُ (dār) دَارِي (dārī) (wāladun) دَارُ (dār)

وَلَا (wālā) وَلَدَا (wāladan) (yādin) وَلَا (wālā)

يَلُ (yālu) يَلَا (yālan) كَلْبًا (kalban) يَلُ (yālu)

بَيْتًا يَا كِتَابًا ثَوْرًا كَرَمًا كَبِيرًا

يَدِي - يَدُنَا - تَارِكُمْ - دِيكُ - يَدُورُ - تَارِكُ

وَلَدِي - دَرَسَ - دَرَسَ - دَرَسَ - دَرَسَ - يَدْرُسُ

تَدْرُسُ - تَدْرُسُ - تَدْرُسُ - تَدْرُسُ - يَدُ - يَدُ

دَرَسْنَا - دَرَسْتُمْ - دَرَسَ - يَدْرُسُ.

(23) The letter د (d) cannot be joined to the following letter.

For example وَلَدِي (wāladī).

(24) The Tanwin (a) is always followed

by an Alif (ا). For example يَا (yā) تَدْرُسُ (tadrus).

See below page 33 (26).

ذ (dh) (23) ذَذِي (dhadhīdh)

ذَكَرَ (dhákara) يَذْكُرُ (yadhkuru) ذَنْبٌ (ladhīdhun)

كَذَبَ (kadhābun) كَذِبٌ (kidhūn) كَذِبًا (dhakāra) كَذِبًا (dhakāra)

كَذَبْتُ (dhakāra) كَذَبْتُ (dhakāra) كَذَبْتُ (dhakāra)

كَذَبْتُ (dhakāra) كَذَبْتُ (dhakāra) كَذَبْتُ (dhakāra)

كَذَبْتُ (dhakāra) كَذَبْتُ (dhakāra) كَذَبْتُ (dhakāra)

كَذَبْتُ (dhakāra) كَذَبْتُ (dhakāra) كَذَبْتُ (dhakāra)

كَذَبْتُ (dhakāra) كَذَبْتُ (dhakāra) كَذَبْتُ (dhakāra)

ف (f) فَفْ (fifufa)

فَلَتَ (lafata) مَلَفُوفٌ (malufūn) فَنَ (kafirun)

فَلَفَ (dāfana) فُلْفُلٌ (fulfulun) فَارَاتٌ (farāra) فِي (fī)

فَرَاتٌ (fardun) فَارَاتٌ (farāra) فِي (fī)

(23) The letter ذ (dh) is pronounced in Arabic like th in the English words: this, these.

مَفْرُوثٌ (mūfradun) دَفْنَتْ (dufinat)

لَفَّ شَرِيفٌ شَرِيفٌ فَكَّرَ فَرَدًا

فَرَأَى — فَرُونَ — فَرَمَتْ — فَرَمَتْ — فَرَمَتْ — فَرَمَتْ

فَرَمَتْ — فَرَمَتْ — فَرَمَتْ — فَرَمَتْ — فَرَمَتْ — فَرَمَتْ

مَاءٌ (ma'un) (24)

شَاءَ (shā'a) أَكَلَ (ákala) أَبَ (ábun)

أَبَا (ábun) أَبَا (ábun) أَبَا (ábun)

أَبَا (ábun) أَبَا (ábun) أَبَا (ábun)

أَبَا (ábun) أَبَا (ábun) أَبَا (ábun)

أَبَا (ábun) أَبَا (ábun) أَبَا (ábun)

أَبَا (ábun) أَبَا (ábun) أَبَا (ábun)

أَبَا (ábun) أَبَا (ábun) أَبَا (ábun)

أَبَا (ábun) أَبَا (ábun) أَبَا (ábun)

أَبَا (ábun) أَبَا (ábun) أَبَا (ábun)

The Hamza (ء) is written sometimes with | (Alif), surra-

سَأَلْتُ سَوَّالَ يَبْدَأُ (sa'ilun) (su'dalun)

أَنْبَى يَاكُلُ (yābba'u) (unbi'a)

أَمْرٌ زَائِرٌ يَبْدَأُ رَأَيْتَ بَنَاءً

أَسْرَ - أَسِيرَ - أَسْلَمَ - يُؤَكِّدُ - يَبْدَأُ - سَائِرَ
سَائِلَ - أَرْشَدَ - أَكَّدَ - أَمِنَ - سَالَ

times with ي (y) and sometimes with و (w) or without any other letter. For example أَكَلْتُ (akalta); بَدَأَ (badda'a); سَأَلَ (su'ila); يُؤَكِّدُ (yu'akkidu); شَاءَ (sha'a).

Note: 1. When the **hamza** is written with a ي (y), then

the ي is written without its two points. For example

هَنَى (hani'a) سَأَلَ (su'ila)

2. يَ etc. is pronounced 'a, 'u, and 'i

not: wa, wu, ya, yu etc.

3. سَالَ, pronunciation: sāla; سَالَ, pronunciation: sd'ala.

4. يَأْمُرُ, pronunciation: yd'kulu, yd'muru, يَأْكُلُ

Note: The letter ط will be designated in the English transcription by the sign 't' as if there was a short pause after the first vowel.

Seventh Lesson

(read and translate)

1. لِي أَبٌ وَأُمٌّ وَلَهُ أَبٌ وَأُمٌّ 2. بَابٌ كَبِيرٌ
- وَسَبَّاحٌ كَبِيرٌ 3. لَنَا بَابٌ كَبِيرٌ وَلَهُمْ سَبَّاحٌ
- كَبِيرٌ 4. لَهَا دِيَارٌ كَبِيرٌ وَسَمِينٌ وَأَمْرٌ دِيَارٌ
- كَبِيرٌ وَسَمِينٌ 5. لَكُمْ قَوْمٌ سَمِينٌ وَكَلْبٌ كَبِيرٌ
6. لَكُنْ بَيْتٌ وَبُسْتَانٌ وَلَهَا كَرَمٌ كَبِيرٌ 7. أَنَا
- وَأَنْتَ 8. أَنْتَ وَهُوَ 9. هُوَ كَبِيرٌ وَسَمِينٌ
- وَأَنْتَ كَبِيرٌ وَسَمِينٌ 10. لِي فِيلٌ كَبِيرٌ وَسَمِينٌ
- وَلَهُ تَوْرٌ سَمِينٌ 11. لَهَا دَفْطَرٌ وَكِتَابٌ وَلَكَ دَفْطَرٌ
- وَكِتَابٌ 12. فِيلٌ وَتَوْرٌ. بَيْتٌ وَبُسْتَانٌ.

Vocabulary: 10. أَبٌ "father" 11. أُمٌّ "mother" 12. بَابٌ "door", "gate" 13. سَبَّاحٌ "window" 14. دِيَارٌ "door", "gate" 15. أَنَا "I" 16. أَنْتَ "thou (masc)" 17. هُوَ "he" 18. فِيلٌ "elephant" 19. دَفْطَرٌ "writing-book", "copy-book" (Note: "he is fat" "أَنَا سَمِينٌ" "thou (masc.) art fat" "أَنْتَ سَمِينٌ"; "fat")

Translate: 1. A big door and a big window 2. Thou hast a fat elephant and we have a big and a fat

3. I have a copy-book and a book and he has a book
4. She has a fat cock 5. We have a dog and you (fem.) have a dog 6. A father and a mother 7. I and he. He and thou (masc.) 8. He is fat 9. thou (masc.) art fat and big 10. You (masc.) have a father and a mother and we have a father and a mother.

Eighth Lesson

(read and translate)

كَلْبٌ (kalbun) "dog"

كَلْبِي (kalbī) "my dog" كَلْبُكَ (kalbuka) "thy (masc.) dog",

كَلْبُكِ (kalbuki) "thy (fem.) dog", كَلْبُهُ (kalbuhu) "his dog",

كَلْبُهَا (kalbuhā) "her dog", كَلْبُنَا (kalbunā) "our dog", كَلْبُكُمْ (kalbukum) "your (masc.) dog", كَلْبُكُنَّ (kalbukunna) "your (fem.) dog", كَلْبُهُمْ (kalbuhum) "their (masc.) dog", كَلْبُهُنَّ (kalbuhunna) "their (fem.) dog"

Plural	Singular
"our dog" كَلْبُنَا	"my dog" كَلْبِي
"your (masc.) dog" كَلْبُكُمْ	"thy (masc.) dog" كَلْبُكَ
"your (fem.) dog" كَلْبُكُنَّ	"thy (fem.) dog" كَلْبُكِ
"their (masc.) dog" كَلْبُهُمْ	"his dog" كَلْبُهُ
"their (fem.) dog" كَلْبُهُنَّ	"her dog" كَلْبُهَا

Translate: Thy (masc.) dog; our dog; his dog; their (masc.) dog; their (fem.) dog; her dog; my dog; thy (fem.) dog; their (fem.) dog; your (masc.) dog.

Declinate the following two nouns:

كِتَابٌ "book" بَيْتٌ "house"

كِتَابِي "my book" بَيْتِي "my house"

كِتَابُكَ "thy (masc.) book" بَيْتُكَ "thy (masc.) house"

etc.

etc.

and also:

بُسْتَانٌ "vineyard" كَرْمٌ "ox" ثَوْرٌ "gate"; بَابٌ



"garden" فِيلٌ "elephant".

Ninth Lesson

(read and translate)

1. لِي أَرَبٌ وَهَذَا أَرَبٌ 2. أَرَبُكَ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ أَرَبِي 3. لَهُ كَلْبٌ وَلِي كَلْبٌ 4. كَلْبُهُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ كَلْبِي 5. سَلِمٌ وَلَدٌ كَبِيرٌ 6. شَاكِرٌ تَلْمِذٌ كَبِيرٌ 7. سَلِمٌ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ تَلْمِذِي 8. شَاكِرٌ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ وَلَدِي 9. أَيْنَ ثَوْرُكَ؟ 10. كِتَابُكَ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ كِتَابِي ثَوْرِي فِي بُسْتَانِي

11. كَرِهَ مَا أَكْبَرُ مِنْ كَرِهِي 12. تَوَرَّهْ أَكْبَرُ
وَأَسْمَنُ مِنْ تَوَرِّي 13. تَلْهَيْذِي فِي كَرِهِي 14. أَيْنَ تَلْهَيْذِكَ - تَلْهَيْذِي فِي كَرِهِي 15. بَسِئَهُ
أَيْنَ أَرَابِي - أَرَابِكَ فِي 16. أَكْبَرُ مِنْ بَسِيئِي

Vocabulary: 20.  "here" 21.  "from"; "of."

22. أَكْبَرُ | "greater (bigger) than" (أكْبَرُ "great", "big")
 23. أَكْبَرُ مِنْ | "fatter than" (أَكْبَرُ "fat")
 24. سَلِيمٌ | "Salim"
 25. شَاكِرٌ | "Shakir" (proper noun masculine)
 26. وَلَدٌ | "boy"
 27. تَلِيذٌ | "pupil"
 28. سَلِيمٌ | "Salim"
 29. فِي | "in"
 30. أَيْنَ | "where"

Translate: 1. His dog is fatter than my dog.

2. Where is their (masc.) ox? — their ox is in my garden.
3. Her cock is fatter than my cock. 4. Thy (masc.) hare is in my garden. 5. His boy is bigger than my boy. 6. Where is my pupil and thy (masc.) pupil? — my pupil and thy (masc.) pupil are in my vineyard. 7. I have an ox and she has an ox. Her ox is bigger and fatter than my ox. 8. Where is our dog? — Your (masc.) dog is in my house.

Tenth Lesson

ق (q) (27) ققق (qiqquq)

قَدْ رَسَتْ (qáddasat) قَالَ يَقُولُ (qálla yaqúlu) (yaqúlu)

يقدر (yudaddisu) دقيق (daqiqun) قبل

قَامَ (qáma) يَغْمُ (yáḡmu) (yaqúmu)

٤٦
٤٧
٤٨
٤٩
٥٠

سَوِّفٌ - قَبِيلٌ - قَوْلِي - قَمِينًا - سَوَاقٌ - سَبِيحٌ
فَنَابِلٌ - فَرَا - فَرَاتٌ - فَيُّوْرٌ - فَرَّيْنٌ - فَرِيحٌ

ج (28) ج (28) ج (28)

جَل (gámalun) جِل (gismun) جِسْم (jismun)

٢٠١٠
 (magnunun)
 جَنُون (jāngama)
 ١٠٠٠
 (rīgjun)

(27) The letter **ك** is a **k** sound produced in the throat. In the

English transcription it will be designated by **q**.

(28) The letter **ج** (g) is pronounced like the **j** and like the

g in the English words: **j**oy and **g**entle.

In the English transcription it will be designated by **g**.

جَدِيدٌ (gdā'idun) جَلَسَ (gdā'sa)
 تَاجِرٌ جَمَلِيٌّ بِجَانِبِ يَجْلِسُ
 جَدُوبٌ - جَرٌّ - نَجِيسٌ - جَالِسٌ - مَاجٌ - هَاجٌ
 نَاجٍ - جَمَلِيٌّ - لُجُومِيٌّ - تَرْجَمَةٌ - جِسْمُكَ -
 جَدٌّ - جَدِّيٌّ - جَلَسْنَا - جَلَسْتُمْ - جَرَّتْ.

ح (h) حَسْبُكَ (hishba)
 ح حَسْبُكَ

لَحْمٌ حَكِيمٌ (lā'humun) (hāk'imun) بَحْرٌ (bā'hrun)
 رَحِيمٌ (rā'himun) مَرَجٌ (mā'rgun) سَلَحٌ (sāl'ha)
 حَلَّتْ حَمَارٌ سَلَحٌ رَاحٌ رَحِمٌ (wā'hidun) (hāl'ibun) (sāl'la'ha)

(29) The letter ح (h) is a consonant which usually gives much trouble to English students. It is a strong aspirated h produced with effort.

In the English transcription it will be designated by h.

حَارِسٌ - لَحْمٌ - لَحْمُكَ - وَاحِدٌ - يَحْرُسُونَ
 مَرْحُومٌ - تَعَفَّتْ - حَرَكَاتٌ - مِلْحٌ - حَرْبٌ - نَجَاحٌ
 يَعْمَلُ - حَدَّثَتْ - حَوَادِثٌ.

خ (kh) خَرَجَ (khā'ragu) يَخْرُجُ (yā'khrugu) خَمْسٌ (khāmsun)
 خَرَجَ (khā'ragu) دَخَلَتْ (dā'khā'la) خَبِيرٌ (khābārūn)
 خَمْسٌ (khāmsin) هَذَا (hā'dha) لَكِنْ (lā'kin)

إِلَهُ (ilā'hu) أَبْرَهِيمَ (ibrā'hīmu) خَبِيرٌ (khābārūn) دَخَلْنَا لَكُنْهُمْ
 دَخَلْنَا - خَرَجْتُمْ - حَرِيقٌ - جَبْرٌ - ذَلِكْ
 هَذِهِ - أَجْبَرٌ - حَمَارٌ - خَرَجْنَا - أَخْرَجَ

(30) The letter خ (kh) is the same as the ch in Scottish words, such as loch. But more from the throat.

(31) In some words the long vowel ā (اَ) is expressed by a short vertical stroke over the consonant. For example: هَذَا (hā'dha), ذَلِكْ (dhā'lik) etc.

Eleventh Lesson

أ

Plural	Singular
"we"	أَنَا
"you (masc.)"	أَنْتَ
"you (fem.)"	أَنْتِ
"they (masc.)"	هُوَ
"they (fem.)"	هِيَ

Translate: We and thou (masc.); you (masc.) and they (masc.); he and she; they (fem.) and you (fem.); thou (fem.) and I; we and she; I and he.

B

Plural	Singular
"we have written" or "we wrote"	كَتَبْنَا
"you (m.) have written" or "you wrote"	كَتَبْتُمْ
"you (f.) have written" or "you wrote"	كَتَبْتِ
"they (m.) have written" or "they wrote"	كَتَبُوا
"they (f.) have written" or "they wrote"	كَتَبْنَ

(32) An | is written but **not pronounced** after the و ending

of some verbal forms e.g. كَتَبُوا, pronounce: katabu.

Translate: We have written; they (masc.) have written; he wrote; we wrote; he has written; you (masc.) have written; thou (fem.) has written; I wrote; you (fem.) wrote; thou (fem.) wrote; I have written; you (masc.) wrote; thou (masc.) wrote.

Conjugate as above the following four verbs:

تَرَكْتُ "I have left" or "I left"

كَسَرْتُ "I have broken" or "I broke"

أَكَلْتُ "I have eaten" or "I ate"

فَسَقَمْتُ "I have divided" or "I divided"

Twelfth Lesson

(read and translate)

1. مَا هَذَا؟ - هَذَا جَارٌ 2. هَذَا جَارِي 3. هَذَا كُتُبُكَ 4. جَارِي أَكَلَ وَجَارُكَ مَا أَكَلَ 5. أَنَا أَكَلْتُ وَأَنْتَ مَا أَكَلْتَ 6. مَنِ كَتَبَ وَمَنْ رَسَمَ؟ - سَلِمٌ كَتَبَ وَأَنَا رَسَمْتُ 7. لِي أَخٌ وَأَخْتٌ وَلَهُ أَخٌ وَأَخْتٌ 8. شَاكِرٌ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ أَخِي 9. لِي جَلٌّ وَلَكَ جَلٌّ 10. جَلُّكَ أَكْبَرُ وَأَسْمَنُ مِنْ جَمَلِي 10. مَنْ خَرَجَ مِنْ بَيْتَانِي؟ - أَخِي خَرَجَ مِنْ هَذَاكَ

11. مَنْ أَكَلَ فِي بُسْتَانِي؟ 12. أَكَلَ هُنَاكَ أَخِي
كَتَبَ هُنَا وَأَخِي كَتَبَتْ هُنَاكَ 13. جَمَلِي أَكَلَ
هُنَا وَجَمَلُكَ أَكَلَ هُنَاكَ 14. هُمْ كَتَبُوا وَمَا رَسَمُوا
15. هُنَّ رَسَمْنَ وَمَا كَتَبْنَ 16. نَحْنُ خَرَجْنَا مِنْ
بُسْتَانِي وَأَنْتُمْ خَرَجْتُمْ مِنْ هُنَاكَ 17. هُمْ رَسَمُوا
وَأَنْتُمْ مَا رَسَمْتُمْ 18. نَحْنُ وَأَنْتُمْ. هُمْ وَأَنْتُمْ.
أَنَا وَهِنَّ. أَنْتَ وَهُوَ. هِيَ وَأَنْتَ 19. كَتَبْنَا
وَمَا رَسَمْنَا. رَسَمْتُمْ وَمَا كَتَبْتُمْ. كَتَبُوا وَمَا رَسَمُوا.

Vocabulary:

30. مَا "what?" 31. هَذَا "this" 32. جَارٌ "neighbor"
"ass" 33. هَذَا جَارِي "this is an ass" 34. أَكَلَ "to eat" 35. مَنْ "who?" 36. كَتَبَ "to write" 37. رَسَمَ "to sketch", "to draw" 38. أَخٌ "brother"
39. هُنَاكَ "here" 40. جَمَلٌ "camel" 41. خَرَجَ "to go out" 42. أَخْتُ "sister" 43. هُنَا "here" 44-50. هُنَّ نَحْنُ etc. See above p. 28.

Note 1: The Arabic verb usually has three radical letters

as رَسَمَ. أَكَلَ. كَتَبَ.

Note 2: In dictionaries the Arabic verb is found in its

3rd pers. sing. masc. active form. This form is generally given in the dictionaries as the infinitive of the verb. Thus we say: أَكَلَ "to eat"; كَتَبَ "to write", although it really means "he ate"; "he wrote".

Translate:

1. I ate (have eaten) and thou (tem.) didst not eat
2. They (tamec.) wrote (have written) and we drew (have drawn)
3. My father went out of my garden
4. My mother went out of my vineyard
5. We wrote and he did not write
6. My pupil has a brother and a sister and thou (tem.) hast a brother
7. Thy (tamec.) camel ate (has eaten) and my ass did not eat
8. What is this? — this is a camel
9. Your (tamec.) dog is bigger and fatter than my dog
10. We ate (have eaten) in my garden
11. He ate (has eaten) and you she did not eat
12. My sister wrote (has written) and you (tem.) did not write
13. Your (tamec.) brother went out of my vineyard
14. We ate and she did not eat.

Thirteenth Lesson

(33) (t) ع

مَلِينَةٌ (malīnatun) سِنَّةٌ (sānatun) لَهُ (lahu)

كَبِيرَةٌ (kabīratun) سَيَّارَةٌ (sayyāratun) بِهِ

(33) The letter ع with two points above it (ة) is pronounced like

(t). For example سِنَّةٌ (sānatun).

The letter ع (t) is found only at the end of the words (nouns or adjectives).

The letter ع is called in Arabic **Tā Marbūṭa** and the letter

ت is called **Tā Tawīla**.

بَقْرَةٌ (bāqaratun) بَقْرَةٌ (bāqaratin) أَنْ

آكَلْ (ʿan) آكَلْ (ʾakīlun) (34)

أَمْرٌ (ʾamru) أَخَذَ (ʾakhudhu)

هَرَّةٌ أَمْرٌ هَرَّةٌ سَمِينَةٌ سَنَةٌ
بَدَأَ — سَنَةٌ — بَسَاتَنًا — سَيَّارَتِي — كَتَبْتُ
يَقْرَأُ — قَرَأَ — أَمْرٌ — رَأَى

(39) Whenever ء is written above an **alif** and is followed by ا

(thus: اء) or by a vowelless **Alif** (thus: ا), then the **Hamza**

and its vowel are dropped and one **Alif** only is written,

while above it is put the sign called **Madda**, which is

pronounced 'ā e.g. أَكَلْ (ʾakūlu) instead of أَكَلْ,

قُرْآنٌ (qurʾānun) instead of قُرْءَانٌ.

Note: The ا in words like سُوءٌ (suʾūn) and يَتَذَكَّرَانِ

(yadhabadīʿan) is not changed into ا because the ء in

both cases is not above **Alif** (ا).

طَطَطُ (39) (t) ط (titaṭu)

طَبُّ (ṭibbun) طَحَنَ (ṭaḥana) هَرَّةٌ (ḥirratun) (36)

بَقْرَةٌ (bāqaratun) لَطِيفٌ (latīfun) طِفْلٌ

يَطْلُبُ (ṭalibbu) طَلَبَ (ṭalaba) (ṭalaba)

طَهَّرَ — نَطَلَبُ — طَلَبْنَا — لَطِيفَةٌ — سَمِطَتِ
مَكْتُوبَةٌ — سَمِينَةٌ — بَكَيْتَ — رَبُّهُ — وَسِيلَةٌ.

ظ (37) (z)

نَظِيفٌ (nazīfun) نَظَرَ (nazara) مَطَرٌ (maṭarun)

طَبِيبٌ (ṭabībun) مَدِينَةٌ (madīnatun) مَا

(38) The letter ظ is an emphatic **ṭ** sound produced by the tongue

being set against the palate instead of the teeth.

The letter ط will be designated in the English transcription by **ṭ**

(38) The **Tauwin** over the letter **ṭ** is not followed by an

Alif (see above page 17 (24)). For example سَنَةٌ (sānatan).

(37) The letter ظ is an emphatic **z** sound produced by the tongue being set against the palate instead of the teeth.

The letter ظ will be designated in the English transcription by **z**.

يُنْظَرُ (yánzǔr) طُنْتُ (zandntu) يُظِلُّ

(kafaza) لَفَظَ (nazāna) نَظَرْنَا (yuzillu)

ظُنَّ نَظَرَ ظُلُّ مَظِلُّ مَلْفُوظٌ

ظَهَرَ مَطْهَرَ لَفَظَ مَطْلُوبٌ طَارَ

رَبَطَ مَرَبُوطَةٌ جَرِيدَةٌ أَخَذَ

قَرَأَ أَنْبَا تَنْبَغَانِ رَبَّةٌ رَبَّةٌ

مَرَحِبُهُ رَحْمَةُ حَكَمُهُ مَلِينُهُ

ظَلَمُونَ - قَرَأَ - قَرَأَ - مَبْسُوطٌ - تَرَكَ - طَرِيقُهُ

طُرُقٌ - نَظَرْنَا - نَحْسَةُ - نَحْسَةُ - آكَلَ

رَبَطْتُ - آكَلْتُ - يَهْرَأَن - حَرَكَهُ - حَرَكَهُ

ظَهَرْتُ - ظَاهِرٌ - لَفَظْتُ - يَظُنُّ - ظَنَنْتُ - شَدِيدٌ

هَذَا - لَكِنْ - فِكْرَةٌ - فِكْرَةٌ - كَلْبًا - حَارًّا

أَرَبًا - مَدِينَةً.

Fourteenth Lesson

(read and translate)

خَيْمَتُهُ (kháymatu) "tent"

خَيْمَتِي (kháymati) "my tent"

"thy (masc.) tent" خَيْمَتُكَ (kháymatuki) "thy (fem.) tent" خَيْمَتُهَا

(kháymatuhu) "his tent" خَيْمَتُهَا (kháymatuha) "her tent" خَيْمَتُنَا

(kháymatunā) "our tent" خَيْمَتُكُمْ (kháymatukum) "your (masc.) tent" خَيْمَتُكُمْ

(kháymatukunna) "your (masc.) tent" خَيْمَتُهُمْ (kháymatuhum) "their (masc.) tent" خَيْمَتُهُنَّ (kháymatuhunna)

"their (fem.) tent"

Plural	Singular
"our tent" خَيْمَتُنَا	"my tent" خَيْمَتِي
"your (masc.) tent" خَيْمَتُكُمْ	"thy (masc.) tent" خَيْمَتُكَ
"your (fem.) tent" خَيْمَتُكُمْ	"thy (fem.) tent" خَيْمَتُكِ
"their (masc.) tent" خَيْمَتُهُمْ	"his tent" خَيْمَتُهُ
"their (fem.) tent" خَيْمَتُهُنَّ	"her tent" خَيْمَتُهَا

Note : Nouns ending in ة (Tā Marbūta) change the ة

into ت (Tā Jawlia), when the Possessive Pronouns are attached to them. For example خَيْمَتِي "my tent"; خَيْمَتُكَ "thy (masc.) tent" etc.

Translate: "our tent"; "thy (masc.) tent"; "his tent"; "your (fem.) tent"; "their (masc.) tent"; "thy (fem.) tent"; "my tent"; "her tent"; "your (masc.) tent"; "their (fem.) tent".

Declinate the following two nouns :

جَرِيدَةٌ "newspaper"
بَهْرَةٌ "cow"

جَرِيدَتِي "my newspaper"
بَهْرَتِي "my cow"

جَرِيدَتُكَ "thy (masc.) newspaper"
بَهْرَتُكَ "thy (masc.) cow"

etc.

etc.

and also :

أَرْنَبٌ "hare"
زُبْدَةٌ "butter"
مَدِينَةٌ "city"
مَدِينَةٌ "town"

جَرَّةٌ "jar"
قَبِيلَةٌ "tribe"
تَلْمِيزٌ "pupil"
جَمَلٌ "camel"

(read and translate)

1. كَرَمِي بَعِيدٌ وَكَرْمُكَ قَرِيبٌ مِنْ هُنَا 2. بَيْتُهُ قَرِيبٌ مِنْ هُنَا وَبَيْتَانِي بَعِيدٌ مِنْ هُنَا 3. مَنْ قَرَأَ وَمَنْ كَتَبَ 1- أَخِي قَرَأَتْ وَأَنَا كَتَبْتُ 4. مَا قَرَأْتُ اخْتُكَ 1- أَخِي قَرَأَتْ فِي كِتَابِي 3. كُلِّي اسْوَدِّ وَكُلُّكَ أَحْمَرٌ 6. لِي حَبْرٌ أَزْرَقٌ وَلَكَ حَبْرٌ اسْوَدِّ 7. دَفْتَرِي ثَقِيلٌ وَدَفْتَرُكَ خَفِيفٌ 8. أَخِي قَرَأَ فِي جَرِيدَتِي وَجَارِي كَتَبَ فِي دَفْتَرِي 9. هُنَّ قَرَأْنَ

وَمَنْ كَتَبُوا 10. نَحْنُ كَتَبْنَا وَأَنْتُمْ قَرَأْتُمْ 11. بَيْتَانِي بَعِيدٌ مِنْ هُنَا وَبَيْتَاكَ أَبْعَدُ مِنْهُ 12. كَرَمِي قَرِيبٌ مِنْ هُنَا وَكَرْمُهُ أَبْعَدُ مِنْهُ 13. حَبْرِي أَزْرَقٌ وَحَبْرُكَ اسْوَدُّ 14. دِيكِي ثَقِيلٌ وَدِيكُكَ خَفِيفٌ 15. هُوَ قَرَأَ فِي جَرِيدَتِي وَهِيَ مَا قَرَأَتْ.

Vocabulary: 51. أَبْعَدُ "farther than"
أَقْرَبُ "nearer than"

52. قَرِيبٌ "near"
53. أَقْرَبُ مِنْ "nearer than"

(See above page 30 Notes 1-2) 54. اسْوَدُّ "black"
55. أَحْمَرٌ "red"

56. أَثْقَلُ مِنْ "heavier than"
57. حَبْرٌ "ink"
58. ثَقِيلٌ "heavy"

59. خَفِيفٌ "light (in weight)"
60. جَرِيدَةٌ "newspaper"

61. جَارٌ "neighbour".

Note : مِنْ "from"; مِنْ "of"; "than".

مِنْ "from (of) me"; "than I"; "from (of) thee (masc.)";

مِنْكَ "from (of) thee (fem.)"; مِنْهُ "from (of) him"; مِنْهَا "from (of) her"; مِنْكُمْ "from (of) you (pl.)"

مِنْهَا "from (of) her"; مِنْكُمْ "from (of) you (pl.)"

Translate: 1. Thy (masc.) sister wrote and I read.

2. Where is thy (fem.) neighbour? — he is in my vineyard

3. Her ink is black and his ink is blue 4. Their (fem.) garden is nearer than my vineyard 5. Thy (masc.) cock is heavier than my cock 6. What did he read? — he read my newspaper 7. Your house is nearer than my house 8. I read and you (masc.) wrote 9. I wrote and my neighbour read 10. We read and they (masc.) did not read 11. She wrote and her sister did not write 12. She ate and he did not eat 13. His house is bigger than my house 14. His copy-book is heavier than my copy-book 15. Where is your (masc.) dog? — my dog is in my garden.

Fifteenth Lesson

Conjugate the following two verbs:

شَرِبْتُ "I drank"	دَخَلْتُ "I entered"
شَرِبْتَ "thou (masc.) drankest"	دَخَلْتَ "thou (masc.) enteredst"
شَرِبْتِ "thou (fem.) drankest"	دَخَلْتِ "thou (fem.) enteredst"
شَرَبَ "he drank"	دَخَلَ "he entered"
etc.	etc.

and also:

رَكَبَ "to ride" (See above page 30 notes 1-2);
فَتَحَ "to open";

understand";

(read and translate)

1. مَنْ شَرِبَ وَمَنْ أَكَلَ؟ — أَخِي شَرِبَ وَأَنَا أَكَلْتُ 2. هُمُ أَكَلُوا وَمَا شَرِبُوا وَهُنَّ شَرِبْنَ وَمَا أَكَلْنَ 3. أَرَأَيْتَ شَرِبَ وَأَرَأَيْتَ مَا شَرِبَ

4. أَرَأَيْتَ أَسْمَنَ مِنْ أَرَأَيْتَ 5. أَخِي دَخَلَ كَرْمِي وَجَارَتُ خَرَجَ مِنْهُ 6. لِي خَرُوفٌ سَمِينٌ وَلَهَا خَرُوفٌ سَمِينٌ 7. خَرُوفُهُ كَبِيرٌ وَخَرُوفِي أَكْبَرُ مِنْهُ 8. أَنْتَ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ أَخِي وَأَنَا أَكْبَرُ مِنْكَ مِنْ بَسْتَانِي؟ — جَدِّي خَرَجَ مِنْهُ 11. جَدِّي دَخَلَ بَسْتَانِي وَخَرَجْتُ مِنْهُ 12. أَيْنَ جَدُّكَ وَجَدَّتْكَ؟ — جَدِّي وَجَدَّتِي فِي كَرْمِي 13. أَيْنَ جَدَّتِي وَجَدَّتِي فِي كَرْمِي.

Vocabulary: 62. شَرِبَ "to drink" (See above page 30

notes 1-2) 63. دَخَلَ "to enter" 64. خَرُوفٌ "lamb" 65. جَدُّ

"grand-father" 66. جَدَّةٌ "grand-mother".

Translate: 1. Thy (masc.) grand-father has written and my father has read 2. Your (masc.) lamb is fatter than my lamb 3. Where is our mother? — your (fem.) mother is in my vineyard 4. Thy (fem.) pupil is big and my pupil is bigger than he 5. His grand-mother entered my garden 6. My camel drank and her camel did not drink 7. They (masc.) drank and we did not drink 8. He went out of my house 9. My house is nearer than his house 10. My sister drank and his sister did not drink 11. Her elephant is bigger than my elephant.

Sixteenth Lesson

ص (s) صصص (šišuṣa)

صَامَ يَصُومُ صِيل (ṣāma yaṣūmu ṣīl)

صَدِيقٌ أَكْتُبُ (ṣaḍīqin aḡtibu)

قَالَ أَكْتُبُ الْكِتَابَ فِي الْبَيْتِ (qāla aḡtibu l-kitaḇa fī l-bayti)

قَالَ أَكْتُبُ الْكِتَابَ (qāla aḡtibu l-kitaḇa)

(38) The letter **ص** is an emphatic **s** sound produced by the tongue being set against the palate instead of the teeth,

The letter **ص** will be designated in the English transcription by **s**.

(39) The Arabic word never begins with a vowelless letter; therefore in cases in which the word should begin with a vowelless letter, a **Hamza** with **Alif** are attached to the beginning of it.

For example: اُكْتُبْ "write!" (instead of اكتبْ)

"ride!" (instead of اركبْ).

This **Hamza** with its vowel are pronounced only when the word is at the beginning of a sentence. But in the middle of it the **Hamza** with its vowel are dropped and the sign called **Wasla** is put over the **Alif** in place of the **Hamza**. In this case the **Alif** is not pronounced and only serves to combine the following vowelless letter with the last vowel of the preceding word, and then the two words are read as if they were one. For example: قَالَ أَكْتُبْ pronounce:

الْكُرْمُ الْكَبِيرُ (alkurmu-l-kabīru)

مِنَ الْبَيْتِ صَارَ (mina-l-bayti ṣara)

قَالَ لَهُ اُكْتُبْ اُكْتُبْ (qāla lahu aḡtibu aḡtibu) pronounce:

qāla lahu-r-kāb "he said to him: ride!"

The **Hamza** which is changed in the middle of a sentence in the above-mentioned way into **Wasla** is called in Arabic **Hamzat-l-wasli**.

Note : If the word preceding a **Wasla** ends with a vowelless consonant, then a vowel (generally **u**) is given to this

final consonant. For example: قَالَتْ أَشْرَبْ (qālati-sh-rāb)

"she said: drink!" قَالَتْ "she said".

In the preposition **مِنْ** "from" the final **u** receives the

vowel **a** before the **Wasla** of the Article (see below page 57). For example: مِنَ الْبُسْتَانِ (mina-l-bustān) "from the garden".

In other cases it receives the usual **i**. For example: مِنَ ابْنِكَ (mini-b-nika) "from thy (masc.) son".

In the Suffixes **مِنْ** the final **u** receives the

vowel **u** before the **Wasla**. For example: بِبَيْتِهِمُ الْجَدِيدِ (bi-baytiḥumu-l-gadīd) "their (masc.) new house".

(bāyḥumu-l-gadīd) "their (masc.) new house".

(bāyḥumu-l-gadīd) "your (masc.) new house".

رَأَيْتُمُ الْبَيْتَ (ra'aytumu l-bayta) "you (masc.) saw the house".

رَأَيْتُمُ الْبَيْتَ (ra'aytumu l-bayta) "you (masc.) saw the house".

آلِ رَآيَتِ الْكَلْبِ بِحَسْبِ الْبَسْتَانِ

رَصِيفٌ - صَاحِبٌ - أَصْحَابٌ - صَاحِبُ الْبَيْتِ
الْبَيْتِ الْجَدِيدِ - الْبَيْتِ الْقَدِيمِ - الْكَبِيرِ
صَارَ - صَارَتْ - صَدِيقٌ - يَصُومُ الْوَالِدُ.

জি. (৭০) (৭১)

ارض (‘ardun) مضروب (dāraba) اضر (‘adārra) ضحك (maḍrūbun) (dāhika)

معیض (marḍun) ۲ - فرض (radda) ۱۳ - فاردن (fardun) ۲

قرود (qurūdun) قرود (qurūdun)

۱۸۰۰
۱۸۰۱
۱۸۰۲
۱۸۰۳
۱۸۰۴
۱۸۰۵
۱۸۰۶
۱۸۰۷
۱۸۰۸
۱۸۰۹
۱۸۱۰
۱۸۱۱
۱۸۱۲
۱۸۱۳
۱۸۱۴
۱۸۱۵
۱۸۱۶
۱۸۱۷
۱۸۱۸
۱۸۱۹
۱۸۲۰
۱۸۲۱
۱۸۲۲
۱۸۲۳
۱۸۲۴
۱۸۲۵
۱۸۲۶
۱۸۲۷
۱۸۲۸
۱۸۲۹
۱۸۳۰
۱۸۳۱
۱۸۳۲
۱۸۳۳
۱۸۳۴
۱۸۳۵
۱۸۳۶
۱۸۳۷
۱۸۳۸
۱۸۳۹
۱۸۴۰
۱۸۴۱
۱۸۴۲
۱۸۴۳
۱۸۴۴
۱۸۴۵
۱۸۴۶
۱۸۴۷
۱۸۴۸
۱۸۴۹
۱۸۵۰
۱۸۵۱
۱۸۵۲
۱۸۵۳
۱۸۵۴
۱۸۵۵
۱۸۵۶
۱۸۵۷
۱۸۵۸
۱۸۵۹
۱۸۶۰
۱۸۶۱
۱۸۶۲
۱۸۶۳
۱۸۶۴
۱۸۶۵
۱۸۶۶
۱۸۶۷
۱۸۶۸
۱۸۶۹
۱۸۷۰
۱۸۷۱
۱۸۷۲
۱۸۷۳
۱۸۷۴
۱۸۷۵
۱۸۷۶
۱۸۷۷
۱۸۷۸
۱۸۷۹
۱۸۸۰
۱۸۸۱
۱۸۸۲
۱۸۸۳
۱۸۸۴
۱۸۸۵
۱۸۸۶
۱۸۸۷
۱۸۸۸
۱۸۸۹
۱۸۹۰
۱۸۹۱
۱۸۹۲
۱۸۹۳
۱۸۹۴
۱۸۹۵
۱۸۹۶
۱۸۹۷
۱۸۹۸
۱۸۹۹
۱۹۰۰

يَضْرِبُ - قَبَضَ - أَضْرَ - مَضَيْتَ - مَلَأَ - يَضُرُّ
دَابَّ - دُوبِكُ - صَدَّكَ - يَصْدُكَ - مَرَضَ .

(40) The letter ض is an emphatic **d** sound produced by the tongue being set against the palate instead of the teeth.

The letter *ȝ* will be designated in the English transcription by *ȝ*.

$$\mathcal{J}_{(\bar{a})}(\bar{a})$$

(lī'umī) لَإِئْمَنِي
 (al'āb) أَلَّا
 (lī'ābī) لَإِيَّابِي
 (al'islām) أَلَّا إِسْلَامًا
 (al'ānā) أَلَّا أَنَا

الابس (ābisun) لا (lā) الأ (ʾallā)

الارمن
الار
الاسير
الانك

الإمام - الأئمة - الأئمة - الأئمة

٥ - سِرْبِي - مَهْمِهْ - كِيرِ - لَاحِ - لَاحِ - رُفِي

سريت - المهره - لاجي - الكثير - لاجي - لاج

طُورٌ - صَرْفٌ - ضَرْبًا - يُضْرَبُونَ - ضَرْزَرٌ - يُضْلِمُ

اَظْلَمَ - طَبَّيْنَا - يَطْلُبُونَ - رَظَنَّا - سَهَّطَ - يَحْرُكُ

بَطْنٌ - سِدِيدَةٌ - يَصْحَكُونَ - مَضْرُوبٌ - صَوِيٌّ

(11) When the letter ج (I) is followed by the letter | (Ain)

then they are written thus λ . For example λ_{i-1}^i (i'i'dbī),

$\bar{\lambda}(\bar{a})$ $\lambda^{\bar{a}}(\bar{i}'\bar{u}\bar{m}\bar{m}\bar{i})$.

Seventeenth Lesson

"he has found (he found) me"	وَجَدَنِي
"he has found (he found) thee (masc.)"	وَجَدَكَ
"he has found (he found) thee (fem.)"	وَجَدْتِ
" " " " him (or: it)"	وَجَدَهُ
" " " " her (or: it)"	وَجَدَهَا
" " " " us	وَجَدَنَا
" " " " you (masc.)"	وَجَدَكُم
" " " " you (fem.)"	وَجَدْتُنَّ
" " " " them (masc.)"	وَجَدَهُمْ
" " " " them (fem.)"	وَجَدَهُنَّ

When a personal pronoun is the direct object of a verb, it is attached to the verb. For example:

وَجَدَ "he found":

وَجَدَنِي "he found me"; وَجَدَكَ "he found thee (masc.)";
وَجَدْتِ "he found thee (fem.)"; وَجَدَهُ "he found him";
وَجَدَهَا "he found her"; وَجَدَكُم "he found you (masc.)";
وَجَدْتُنَّ "he found you (fem.)"; وَجَدَهُنَّ "he found them (fem.)".

وَجَدْتِ "she found":

وَجَدْتَنِي "she found me"; وَجَدْتَكَ "she found thee (masc.)";
وَجَدْتِ "she found thee (fem.)"; وَجَدْتُهُ "she found us";
وَجَدْتُنَّ "she found you (masc.)"; وَجَدْتُنَّ "she found you (fem.)";
وَجَدْتَهُ "she found him (or: it)"; وَجَدْتَهَا "she found her";
وَجَدْتَهُمْ "she found them (masc.)"; وَجَدْتَهُنَّ "she found them (fem.)".

وَجَدْنَا "we found":
وَجَدْنَاهُ "we found him"; وَجَدْنَاهَا "we found her";
وَجَدْنَاهُمْ "we found them (masc.)"; وَجَدْنَاهُنَّ "we found them (fem.)";
وَجَدْنَا "we found thee (masc.)"; وَجَدْنَا "we found thee (fem.)";
وَجَدْنَا "we found you (masc.)"; وَجَدْنَا "we found you (fem.)";
وَجَدْنَا "we found him"; وَجَدْنَا "we found her";
وَجَدْنَا "we found them (masc.)"; وَجَدْنَا "we found them (fem.)".

وَجَدُونِي "they (masc.) found me"; وَجَدُونَهُ "they (masc.) found him";
وَجَدُونَهَا "they (masc.) found her"; وَجَدُونَهُمْ "they (masc.) found them (masc.)";
وَجَدُونَهُنَّ "they (masc.) found them (fem.)";
وَجَدُونِي "they (fem.) found me"; وَجَدُونَهُ "they (fem.) found him";
وَجَدُونَهَا "they (fem.) found her"; وَجَدُونَهُمْ "they (fem.) found them (masc.)";
وَجَدُونَهُنَّ "they (fem.) found them (fem.)".

The personal pronouns in the objective case are the same as the possessive pronouns (see above page 22 and page 44).

Note 1: The pronominal suffix of the first person in the objective case is ني, while the suffix of the

possessive pronoun in the first person is ي. For example وَجَدَنِي "he found me" (وَجَدَ "he found"; نِي "my house").

Note 2: The final الف (ا) in the 3rd plur. masc. (see above page 28 (32)) is dropped before the suffixes. For example وَجَدُوا "they (masc.) found me"; وَجَدُونِي "they (masc.) found me".

"they found") وَجَدُوهُ "they (masc.) found him" etc

Note 3: The final م (m) in the second person plur. masc. is

dropped and in its place و is put before the pronominal suffixes. For example وَجَدْتُنِي "you

(masc.) found me" وَجَدْتُمُ "you (masc.) found"

وَجَدْتُمُوهُ "you (masc.) found him".

Eighteenth Lesson

(read and translate)

1. أَيْنَ وَجَدَ إِبْرَاهِيمُ حِصَانِي؟ - هُوَ وَجَدَهُ فِي بُسْتَانِي 2. أَيْنَ وَجَدَ أَحْمَدُ بَقَرَتِي؟ - هُوَ وَجَدَهَا فِي كَرْمِي 3. مَنِ صَرَبَ أَخِي؟ - جَارُكَ صَرَبَهُ 4. مَنِ وَجَدَكُمْ فِي بُسْتَانِي؟ - جَارُكَ وَجَدَنَا هُنَاكَ 5. مَنِ صَرَبَكُمْ؟ - جَارُكَ صَرَبَنَا 6. مَنِ أَكَلَ خُبْزِي؟ - تَحْنُ أَكَلْنَاهُ 7. مَنِ شَرَبَ حَلِيبِي؟ - تَحْنُ شَرَبْنَاهُ 8. مَنِ صَرَبَكَ؟ - جَارُكَ صَرَبَنِي 9. مَنِ كَسَرَ فِنْجَانِي؟ - أَخِي أَكَسَرَنِي 10. مَنِ صَرَبَ حَيَارِي؟ - تَلْمِيذُكَ صَرَبَهُ 11. أَخِي مَا

كَسَرَ فِنْجَانِي. 12. أَخِي كَسَرَنِي 13. أَخِي شَرَبَتْ حَلِيبِي وَأَخِي مَا شَرَبَهُ 14. حِصَانُكُمْ أَكْبَرُ وَأَمْنُ مِنْ حِصَانِي أَحْمَدُ صَرَبَهُ 15. لِي حَبْرٌ أَسْوَدٌ وَلَهُ حَبْرٌ أَخْضَرٌ 16. لَهَا كَلْبٌ أَسْوَدٌ وَلَكُمْ كَلْبٌ أَبْيَضٌ 17. لِي حِصَانٌ وَحَارٌ وَلَكُمْ تَوْرٌ وَجَلٌ 18. فِنْجَانُكَ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ فِنْجَانِي.

Vocabulary: 67 وَجَدَ "to find" (see above page 30. Notes

1-2); 68 إِبْرَاهِيمُ "Abraham" (proper noun masculine); 69 حِصَانٌ "horse"; 70 أَحْمَدُ "Ahmad" (proper noun masculine); 71 بَقَرَةٌ "cow"; 72 صَرَبَ "to strike" "to beat"; 73 خَبْرٌ "broader"

74 حَلِيبٌ "milk"; 75 كَسَرَ "to break"; 76 فِنْجَانٌ "cup"; 77 أَكَلَ "ate"; 78 أَبْيَضٌ "white".

Translate: 1. Who found my book? - my sister found it 2. Who has beaten my pupil? - Our neighbour has beaten him 3. Who broke my cup? - their (masc.) sister broke it 4. Your (fem.) ink is black and our ink is blue 5. Her ink is green and his ink is red 6. Ibrahim is bigger than my brother 7. Ahmad broke my cup 8. I have an ass and she has an ass. Her ass is fatter than my ass 9. His horse is big and thy (masc.) horse is bigger than it 10. Your (masc.) dog is black and their (fem.) dog is white 11. Her brother has beaten my ox 12. Where did he find my cup? - he found it in my vineyard 13. Where did he find my cup? - he found it in my vineyard 14. We found her. She found him 15. I found her. Thou (masc.) hast found me.

16. Her brother has beaten my ox 17. Where did he find my cup? - he found it in my vineyard 18. We found her. She found him 19. I found her. Thou (masc.) hast found me.

Nineteenth Lesson

"I shall write", or "I write"	أَكْتُبُ
"thou (masc.) wilt write", or "thou writest"	تَكْتُبُ
"thou (fem.) wilt write", or "thou writest"	تَكْتُبِينَ
"he will write", or "he writes"	يَكْتُبُ
"she will write", or "she writes"	يَكْتُبُ
"we shall write", or "we write"	نَكْتُبُ
"you (masc.) will write", or "you write"	تَكْتُبُونَ
"you (fem.) will write", or "you write"	تَكْتُبْنَ
"they (masc.) will write", or "they write"	يَكْتُبُونَ
"they (fem.) will write", or "they write"	يَكْتُبْنَ

The Arabic verb has two main tenses which, however, are not real tenses in their European sense. These two main tenses are generally known as Perfect and Imperfect.

The Perfect denotes a finished action, most often referring to the **past**, and the Imperfect denotes an unfinished action, most often referring to the **present** or **future**.

Translate: He will write; we shall write; They (masc) will write; he wrote (See above page 28); I have written; he has written; I wrote; he writes; she will write; we write; she writes;

we have written; they (masc) have written; thou (masc) wilt write; you (masc) will write; I shall write; they (fem) wrote; we write; you (fem) have written; she wrote; they (fem) will write; I write; they (masc) write.

The vowel of the second radical letter (see above page 30, note 1) of the Imperfect can be **u**, **a** or **i**. For example يَكْتُبُ (yaktubu) "he will write" or "he writes"; يَشْرَبُ (yashrabu) "he will drink" or "he drinks"; يَضْرِبُ (yadribu) "he will beat" or "he beats".

Conjugate as above the two following verbs:

"I shall beat" (أَضْرِبُ) "I shall drink" (أَشْرَبُ)

أَضْرِبُ	أَشْرَبُ
تَضْرِبُ	تَشْرَبُ
تَضْرِبِينَ	تَشْرَبِينَ
يَضْرِبُ	يَشْرَبُ
etc.	etc.

and also: أَرْكَبُ "I shall ride" or "I ride"; أُنْزِلُ "I shall understand" or "I understand"; أُنْزِلُ "I shall descend" or "I descend"; أَخْرُجُ "I shall go out" or "I go out".

Translate: he will drink; we beat; they (masc) beat; I drink; you (masc) will beat; she will drink; thou (fem) will drink; they (fem) will beat; we shall drink; thou (masc) will beat; you (fem) drink; we beat; I shall drink.

Twentieth Lesson

(read and translate)

1. مِنْ يَكْتُبُ وَمَنْ يَرَسُمُ؟ - أَيْ تَكْتُبُ
وَإِخْتِي تَرَسُمُ 2. هُمْ كَبَرُوا وَأَنْتُمْ مَا كُتِبْتُمْ 3. هُمْ
يَكْتُبُونَ وَأَنْتُمْ لَا تَكْتُبُونَ 4. هُنَّ شَرِبْنَ وَأَنْتِ
مَا شَرِبْتِ 5. هُنَّ يَشْرَبْنَ وَأَنْتِ لَا تَشْرَبْنَ
6. يَهْرَقِي تَشْرَبُ الْآنَ وَهَرَّتْ لَا تَشْرَبُ 7. أَيْنَ
تَكْتُبُ فَاطِمَةُ؟ - هِيَ تَكْتُبُ فِي دَفْتَرِي 8. صَالِحُ
كَتَبَ الْآنَ وَأَنَا مَا كُتِبْتُ 9. أَيْنَ تَرَكْتَ
نُورِي؟ - تَرَكْنَاهُ فِي بُسْتَانِي 10. شَاكِرُ تَرَكَ كِتَابِي
فِي مَدْرَسَتِي 11. مَنْ فَتَحَ كِتَابِي؟ - تَلِيدِي فَتَحَهُ
12. لِي مَائِدَةٌ وَكُرْسِيٌّ وَلَكَ مَائِدَةٌ وَبَنُوكُ
13. مَائِدَتُكَ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ مَائِدَتِي 14. أَيْنَ أَخِي أَحْمَدُ؟ -
هُوَ فِي مَدْرَسَتِي 15. أَخِي فَاطِمَةُ أَكْبَرُ مِنِّي وَأَنَا
أَكْبَرُ مِنْكَ 16. مَنْ فَتَحَ كِتَابِي؟ - أَنَا مَا فَتَحْتُهُ.
فَتَحَهُ تَلِيدُكَ شَاكِرُ 19. هِيَ تَخْرُجُ وَأَنْتِ لَا

تَخْرُجِينَ 20. أَنْتِ تَرَسُمُ وَهُوَ لَا يَرَسُمُ 21. إِبْرَاهِيمُ
يَكْتُبُ وَفَاطِمَةُ لَا تَكْتُبُ 22. أَنْتُمْ تَخْرُجْتُمْ مِنْ
بُسْتَانِي وَهُمْ لَا يَخْرُجُونَ مِنْهُ.

Vocabulary: 79. لَا "not" (particle of negation before the Imperfect)

80. هَآنَ "now", "at present" (Note: at present pronounce:

فَاطِمَةُ 81.) (See above page 40 (39) and page 32 (31))

"Fālimah" (proper noun, feminine) 82. صَالِحٌ "Sālih" (proper noun, masc.)

83. تَرَكَ "to leave" (Imperfect: تَرَكْتُ) 84. مَدْرَسَةٌ "school"

85. مَائِدَةٌ "to open" (Imperfect: افْتَحْتُ) 86. مَائِدَةٌ "table"

87. كُرْسِيٌّ "chair" 88. بَنْكٌ "bench".

Translate: 1. Thy (masc.) brother wrote and we did not

write 2. We shall write and you (masc.) will not write 3. Thy

(masc.) table is bigger than my table 4. I have a chair and

a bench and she has a table and a chair 5. Where did

Salim write? - he wrote in my vineyard 6. His ox is black

and her ox is white 7. Your pupil broke my chair 8. Thy

(fem.) horse is bigger and father than my horse 9. Where is

her brother? - he is in my school 10. They (masc.) will write

and he will not write 11. Our sister drank and thy sister did

not drink 12. Where is his lamb? - his lamb is in my garden

13. I have written and my grand-father did not write 14. Your

(fem.) house is nearer than my house 15. We have an ox

and an ass and he has a camel and a cow 16. She has a

sister and I have a sister and a brother.

Twenty-first Lesson

ع (1) عَصْعَصُ (2) (ʿaʿiʿu)

(ʾismaʿ) عَرَبٌ مَعَ (máʿa) مَعَ (ʾarabun) مَعَ

(yuʿallimu) مَعِيَ سَمِعْتُ (samiʿa) يَعْزَمُ (ʿazma)

(rdʾa) عَلَيَّ رَأَى (rdʾa) عَلَيَّ رَعَى (raʿa) عَلَيَّ

(bāna) مَيَّ بَنَى (bāna) مَيَّ بَنَى (bāna) مَيَّ

(a2) The letter ع is a very strong guttural produced by the compression of the throat and the expulsion of the breath.

The letter ع will be designated in the English transcription by ʿ.

(a3) At the end of a word the ā is often expressed by ي

(a) followed by ي without its two points and without Sukun)

For example بَنَى (bāna) 'he threw'; بَنَى (bāna) 'he built'.

As soon as this ي receives a suffix, it becomes an ا.

For example اَلْتَأَمَّ 'he threw it'; اَلْتَأَمَّ 'he built it'.

ي is called in Arabic **Alif Maqṣūra** and also **Alif Disurati-l-ḡā**.

سَمِعَ إِلَى رَأَى مَعَكَ حَتَّى
مَعْلُومٌ - يَعْلَمُ - عَرَبِيٌّ - مَعْلَا - صَنِيعٌ
صَنَعْتُ - صِنَاعَةٌ - فَعَلَ - عَدَدٌ - مَسْمُودٌ.

غ (gh)

غَبَرِي (ghāyri) مَغْرِبٌ (maghribun) بَلَّغَ

(ghānamun) غَنَمٌ (shughlun) شَغْلٌ (bālagha)

غَرِيبٌ (gharībun) بَلَّغَ (balighun) يَغْسِلُ (ghaniyun)

غَنِيٌّ (yaghsilu)

رَغِبَ غَرِبَ غَيْرَ يَغِيرُ مَبْلَغٌ

غَيْرٌ - يَبْلَغُ - مُرَوِّفَةٌ - غَابَ - مَغْلُوبٌ - غَالِبٌ

يَغِيرُونَ - يَغِيرُونَ - أَشْغَالٌ - غَرَقَ - يَغْرِقُ.

(a1) The letter غ has a sound like the gurgling pronunciation between g and r.

The letter غ will be designated in the English transcription by gh.

مُعَلِّمَكَ عَلَى - عَالِيكَ - عَلَيْنَا - مَعَكُمْ - مَعَنَا - مُنِيرٌ
غَيْرُنَا - فَعَلْتَ - غَرَبْتَ - فَسَلْتَ - يَدْعُونَا - دَعْوُهُ
بُحْرِي - خُدْفَتِي - نُعَيِّرُ - رَغَبْتَ - غَنَمُكَ - غَدَمُكُمْ
شُغْلٌ - رَعَى - رَغَبْتَ - رَأَى - رَأَيْتَ - بَنَى - بَنَاهُ - رَأَاهُ
بَنَى - بَنَى - يَبْنِي .

Twenty-second Lesson

(read and translate)

1. إِلَى أَيْنَ تَذْهَبُ يَا أَخِي؟ - أَذْهَبُ إِلَى
مَدْرَسَتِي 2. أَيْنَ كِتَابُكَ؟ - كِتَابِي عَلَى مَائِدَتِي
3. أَخِي خَرَجْتَ مِنْ عُرْفَتِي وَأَخِي مَا خَرَجَ مِنْ
هُنَاكَ 4. أَخِي رَجَعَ مِنْ يَافَا وَأَبِي يَرْجِعُ غَدًا مِنْ
هُنَاكَ 5. مُمَلِّسِي ذَهَبَ مَعَ جَدِّي إِلَى مَدْرَسَتِي
6. مَنْ خَرَجَ مَعَكَ مِنْ عُرْفَتِي؟ - مُعَلِّمَكَ خَرَجَ
مَعِي مِنْ هُنَاكَ 7. لِي كَلْبٌ كَبِيرٌ وَلَكَ كَلْبٌ صَغِيرٌ
كَلْبُكَ أَصْغَرُ مِنْ كَلْبِي 8. أَخِي أَصْغَرُ مِنِّي وَأَنَا
أَصْغَرُ مِنْكَ 9. جَارِي فَقِيرٌ جَدًّا وَجَارُكَ غَنِيٌ جَدًّا

10. جَمَلُكَ أَصْغَرُ مِنْ جَمَلِي وَجَارُكَ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ
جَارِي 11. أَحَدُ فَقِيرٍ جَدًّا وَسَلِيمٌ أَفْقَرُ مِنِّي
12. إِبْرَاهِيمُ غَنِيٌ جَدًّا وَشَاكِرٌ أَغْنَى مِنِّي .

Vocabulary: 89. إِلَى "to" 90. ذَهَبَ "to go"; "to go
away" (Imperfect) 91. يَا (particle of address) 92. عَلَى
"on"; "upon" 93. عُرْفَةٌ "room"; "chamber" 94. رَجَعَ "to return"
95. يَافَا "Jaffa" 96. غَدًا "to-morrow" 97. مُعَلِّمٌ
(Imperfect) 98. مَعَ "with" 99. مَعِيَ "with me" 100. أَفْقَرُ
"poor"; "needy" 101. أَفْقَرُ مِنْ (richer than) 102. جَدًّا
"very".

100. أَفْقَرُ "poor"; "needy" 101. أَفْقَرُ مِنْ (richer than) 102. جَدًّا
"very".

Translate: 1. Where is my newspaper? - Thy (nase)
newspaper is on my table 2. His horse is smaller than my
horse 3. Her ox is very big 4. Ibrahim is richer than my
neighbour 5. His neighbour is rich and our neighbour is poor
6. O Salim, where is my book? - thy book is in my room
7. Your (nase) garden is smaller than my garden. My garden is
very big 8. Thou (nase) art bigger than my brother 9. Where
is my grand-father? - he is in my room 10. You (nase)
grand-father is richer than my grand-father.

The order of the Arabic alphabet is as follows :

The letters	Names of the letters	Pronunciation of the letters	The letters	Names of the letters	Pronunciation of the letters
ا	'Alif	See page 10 (19), page 19 (26), p. 32 (34), p. 40 (39)	حی	Dād	d. See page 42 (40)
ب	Bā	b.	ط	Tā	t. See page 33 (35)
ت	Tā	t.	ظ	Zā	z. See page 33 (37)
ث	Thā	th. See page 2 (8)	ع	'Ain	See page 52 (42)
ج	Ġim	ġ. See page 25 (28)	غ	Ġhain	ġh. See p. 53 (44)
ح	Hā	h. See page 26 (29)	ف	Fā	f.
خ	Khā	kh. See p. 27 (30)	ق	Qāf	q. See page 23 (27)
د	Dāl	d.	ك	Kāf	k.
ذ	Dhāl	dh. See p. 18 (25)	ل	Lām	l.
ر	Rā	r. See page 6 (13)	م	Mīm	m.
ز	Zai	z.	ن	Nūn	n.
س	Sīn	s.	ه	Hā	h.
ش	Shīn	sh.	و	Wāw	w. See page 8 (16)
ص	Ṣād	ṣ. See page 40 (38)	ي	Yā	y. See Page 9 (18)

Twenty-third Lesson

"the dog"	الْكَلْبُ (1)
"the big dog"	الْكَلْبُ الْكَبِيرُ (2)
"a dog"	كَلْبٌ (3)
"a big dog"	كَلْبٌ كَبِيرٌ

- (1) The definite article "the" is expressed in Arabic by the syllable **الْ**, which is prefixed to the nouns and the adjectives. For example **الْكَلْبُ** "the dog", **الْكَبِيرُ** "the big", "the great".

- (2) The **Hamza** (see above page 19 (26)) of the article **الْ** is **Hamzat-l-wasl** (see above page 40 (29)). This **Hamza** is therefore pronounced only at the beginning of a sentence. But in the middle of the sentence it becomes a **Wasla** (see above page 40 (39)), which combines the vowelless **لِ** of the article with the last vowel of the preceding word and the two words are read as if they were one (see above page 40 (39)). For example **الْبَيْتُ الْكَبِيرُ** "the big house" pronounce : **albēytul-kabīru** "the big house" **الْكَبِيرُ الْكَلْبُ** "the big" pronounce : **dkabīrulkālbū** "the dog ate".

- (3) The indefinite article **a (an)** is expressed in Arabic by the **Tanwin** (see above page 4 (11)). For example **كَلْبٌ** "a dog; **حَاجَرٌ** "an ass".

Note 1: When the noun is qualified by an adjective, the adjective follows it e. g. بَيْتٌ كَبِيرٌ (baytun kabīrun)

"a big house" and not: كَبِيرٌ بَيْتٌ (kabīrun baytun).

If the noun is definite, the adjective also must be made

definite by the addition of the article الٌ thus :

الْبَيْتُ الْكَبِيرُ "the big house".

The copula "is" or "are" is not expressed in Arabic e. g.

الْبَيْتُ كَبِيرٌ "the house is big"; الْخَبَازُ فَقِيرٌ "the baker is poor".

Note 2: هَذَا كَلْبٌ "this is a dog";

"this is a big dog"

هَذَا الْكَلْبُ الْكَبِيرُ "this dog";

"this big dog"

هَذَا الْكَلْبُ كَبِيرٌ "this dog is big"

Translate: A big elephant; the big elephant; this

elephant; this big elephant; the elephant is big; this elephant is big; the hare is fat; the vineyard is large; the house is small; this house is small; the neighbour is poor; the book is big; a big book; this book is big; the big book; this camel is big and fat; a big ass; an ass; the ass is big and fat; the big horse; this horse is fat; this big horse; a fat cock; a big and fat lamb; this lamb is bigger than my lamb; this bread is cheap; this cup is cheap; the cup is cheap; this camel is fatter than my camel, this house is cheaper than my house.

Twenty-fourth Lesson

1. هَذَا الْجَمَلُ صَغِيرٌ. هُوَ أَصْغَرُ مِنْ جَمَلِي

2. هَذَا الْخِمَارُ رَخِيسٌ وَذَلِكَ الْخِمَارُ أَرْخَصُ مِنْهُ

3. ذَلِكَ الْخَيْطُ فَقِيرٌ. هُوَ أَفْقَرُ مِنْ جَارِي 4. مَنْ

كَانَ الْيَوْمَ فِي غُرْفَتِي؟ زَيْدٌ كَانَ هُنَاكَ وَالْخَبَازُ

أَيْضًا كَانَ هُنَاكَ 5. الْخَلَّاقُ كَانَ الْيَوْمَ فِي يَاقَا

وَالْخَدَّادُ أَيْضًا كَانَ هُنَاكَ 6. اخْتُلِكَ كَانَتْ فِي بُسْتَانِي

وَقَاطِئُهُ أَيْضًا كَانَتْ هُنَاكَ 7. أُبِّي كَانَتْ الْيَوْمَ فِي

يَاقَا 8. أَيْنَ الْكِتَابُ الْجَدِيدُ؟ أَيْضًا كَانَتْ هُنَاكَ 9. أَيْنَ الْكِتَابُ

الْجَدِيدُ؟ الْكِتَابُ الْجَدِيدُ عَلَى مَائِدَتِي فِي غُرْفَتِي

10. مَتَى رَجَعَ زَيْدٌ مِنْ يَاقَا وَمَتَى رَجَعَ الْخَلَّاقُ؟

زَيْدٌ رَجَعَ مِنْ يَاقَا الْيَوْمَ وَالْخَلَّاقُ أَيْضًا رَجَعَ

الْيَوْمَ 11. هَذَا كَلْبٌ 12. هَذَا الْبَيْتُ الْجَدِيدُ

أَكْبَرُ وَأَمْنٌ مِنْ كَلْبِي 13. هَذَا أَكْبَرُ مِنْ بَيْتِي وَذَلِكَ الْبَيْتُ أَصْغَرُ مِنْهُ 14. مَتَى

الْفَيْلُ كَبِيرٌ وَذَلِكَ الْفَيْلُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْهُ 15. مَتَى

رَجَعْتُ مِنْ يَافَا؟- رَجَعْتُ الْيَوْمَ مِنْ هُنَاكَ
 15. جَدُّكَ كَانَ الْيَوْمَ فِي كَرْبِي وَفِي بُسْتَانِي 16. أَيْنَ
 الْكَتَبُ الْكَبِيرُ وَأَيْنَ الْجِمَارُ؟- الْكَتَبُ
 الْكَبِيرُ فِي بُسْتَانِي وَالْجِمَارُ أَيْضًا فِي بُسْتَانِي.

Vocabulary: 103. ذَاكَ "that" 104. رَخِيصٌ "cheap" 105. خِيَّاطٌ "tailor" 106. كَانَ "that house" (ذَلِكَ الْبَيْتُ)

رَيْثُ 107. الْيَوْمَ "today" 108. كَانَتْ "she was" 109. خَبَّازٌ "baker" 110. أَيْضًا "also" 111. جَدِيدٌ "new" 112. حَدَّادٌ "blacksmith" 113. حَلَّاقٌ "barber" 114. مَتَى "when?"

114. مَتَى "when?"

114. مَتَى "when?"

Translate: 1. Thy (masc.) book is cheaper than my book

2. This camel is big and that camel is small 3. This tailor is rich and that baker is poor 4. The barber was in Jaffa and the blacksmith too was there 5. This new house is bigger than my house 6. That new book is cheaper than my new book 7. When did you return from Jaffa?—I have returned today from there 8. Where is the tailor?—He is in my room 9. This dog is bigger and father than my dog 11. A big garden. The big garden. This big garden. This garden is big. That garden. That big garden. That garden is big.

Twenty-fifth Lesson

"a baker visited me"	زَارَنِي خَبَّازٌ ⁽¹⁾
"the baker visited me"	زَارَنِي الْخَبَّازُ
"the house of a baker"	بَيْتُ خَبَّازٍ
"the house of the baker"	بَيْتُ الْخَبَّازِ
"he saw a baker"	هُوَ رَأَى خَبَّازًا
"he saw the baker"	هُوَ رَأَى الْخَبَّازَ
"from the baker"	مِنْ الْخَبَّازِ ⁽²⁾
"to the baker"	إِلَى الْخَبَّازِ
"on the baker"	عَلَى الْخَبَّازِ

(1) In Arabic there are three cases: Nominative, Genitive and Accusative.

These three cases are expressed as follows:

c) The Nominative is expressed by the **Tanwin** ~ (un) if the noun is indefinite, and by the vowel ~ (u) if it is definite.

Thus:

زَارَنِي خَبَّازٌ "a baker visited me"

زَارَنِي الْخَبَّازُ "the baker visited me"

- b) The Genitive is expressed by the **Tanwin** (in) if the noun is indefinite and by the vowel (i) if it is definite. Thus:

بَيْتُ خَبَّازٍ "the house of a baker"

بَيْتُ الْخَبَّازِ "the house of the baker"

Note: The Genitive case causes the preceding noun to be definite as if the article **الـ** were prefixed to it. For example:

بَيْتُ خَبَّازٍ "the house of a baker";

بَيْتُ الْخَبَّازِ "the house of the baker" (and not, with a Tanwin, because it is definite).

When the preceding noun is indefinite, the preposition **لـ** must be attached to the following Genitive e.g.

بَيْتُ الْخَبَّازِ "a house of the baker". or:

بَيْتُ مَخْ بَيْوتِ الْخَبَّازِ "a house of the houses of the baker".

- c) The Accusative is expressed by the **Tanwin** (an) if the noun is indefinite and by the vowel (a) if it is definite. Thus:

هُوَ وَجَدَ كِتَابًا "he found a book"

هُوَ وَجَدَ الْكِتَابَ "he found the book"

Note: هُوَ وَجَدَ جَرِيدَةً "he found a newspaper" (see above page 33 (36)).

- e) All prepositions are followed by the genitive e.g.:

إِلَى الْخَبَّازِ "to the baker";

عَنِ الْبَيْتِ "from the baker" (See above page 41, Note);

تَحْتَ الْمَائِدَةِ "on the table";

أُخْرَى الْخَبَّازِ "the baker" (the) **أُخْرَى** falls out if it is

preceded by the preposition **لـ** e.g. **لِلْبَيْتِ** instead of **لِلْبَيْتِ**

Note 1: بَابُ الْبَيْتِ الْكَبِيرِ "the big door of the house"

بَابُ الْبَيْتِ الْكَبِيرِ "the door of the big house"

Note 2: If a noun in the possessive case (genitive) belongs to two nouns, it follows the first while the second comes after it (the genitive) with a possessive-pronoun suffix. For example: بَيْتُ الْخَبَّازِ وَبَيْتُهُ "the house of the baker and his garden" (the baker's house and garden).

كَرْمُ الْجَدَّةِ وَبَيْتُهَا "the vineyard of the grand-mother and her house" (the grand-mother's vineyard and house)

Translate: The door of the house; the dog or the neighbour; the horse is bigger than the ass; he ate bread and she drank milk; I ate the bread and he drank the milk; this new house is bigger than that house; the book is on the table; the dog is under the table; the neighbour is in the vineyard; your (masc.) house is smaller than this new house; thy (masc.) newspaper is on the table; thy (fem.) grand-father is in the garden.

Twenty-sixth Lesson

1. مَنْ فَتَحَ الْبَابَ الْكَبِيرَ؟ - أَنَا فَتَحْتُهُ.
2. مَا أَكَلْتَ الْيَوْمَ؟ - أَكَلْتُ الْيَوْمَ خُبْزًا وَحَمًا.
3. كَلَبُ الْجَارِ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ كَلَبِ الْخَلَّاقِ؟ - أَيْنَ كِتَابُ مُدِيرِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ؟ - كِتَابُهُ عَلَى الْمَائِدَةِ فِي عُرْفَةِ الْجِدِّ وَ جَدُّ الْجَارِ كَانَ الْيَوْمَ فِي كَرَمِ أَخِي جَارُ الْخَيَاطِ قَدِيرٌ. هُوَ أَفْقَرُ مِنْ جَارِ الْخَدَّادِ.
6. جَارُ الْخَيَاطِ قَدِيرٌ. هُوَ أَفْقَرُ مِنْ جَارِ الْخَدَّادِ.
7. مَنْ زَارَكَ الْيَوْمَ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ؟ - مَمْلُوكٌ وَحَمِيدٌ زَارَنِي هُنَاكَ. 8. مَا اسْمُكَ وَمَا اسْمُ أَخِيكَ؟ - اِسْمِي إِسْمَاعِيلُ وَاسْمُ أَخِي فَاطِمَةُ وَ أَخِيكَ زَارَتْ الْيَوْمَ ابْنَتُ الْمَمْلُوكِ. 10. أَيْنَ ابْنُ الْخَدَّادِ؟ - ابْنُهُ فِي بَيْتِ الْخَبَّازِ. 11. أَيْنَ كَلَبُ الْخَالِ؟ - كَلَبُ الْخَالِ تَحْتَ الْمَائِدَةِ. 12. بَيْتُ الْخَالَةِ وَكَرْمُهَا. 13. عَمِّي زَارَ الْيَوْمَ خَالَكَ فِي الْبَيْتِ الْجَدِيدِ. 14. عَمِّي كَانَتْ الْيَوْمَ فِي كَرَمِ جَدَّتِي. 15. ابْنُ الْمُعَلِّمِ الْكَبِيرِ كَانَ الْيَوْمَ فِي يَاقَا. 16. مَنْ شَرَبَ الْخَلِيبَ؟ - أَنَا مَا شَرِبْتُهُ.

- شَرِبْتُهِ أَخِي إِبْرَاهِيمَ. 17. خَالِي زَارَ خَالَ الْجَارِ فِي يَاقَا. 18. مَا اسْمُ الْخَالِ؟ - اسْمُ الْخَالِ إِسْمَاعِيلُ.
19. اسْمُ أَخِي إِبْرَاهِيمُ وَاسْمُ أَخِي هِنْدُ. 20. هَذَا الْبَيْتُ الْجَدِيدُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ بَيْتِي.

Vocabulary: 115. لَحْمٌ "meat" 116. مُدِيرٌ "director"

117. زَارَ "he visited" 118. اسْمُ "name"

119. ابْنٌ "son" (The Hamza in اسْمٌ and in ابْنٌ is Hamzat-i-wasl)

120. سُلَيْمَانٌ "Ismā'īl" (proper noun, masculine) 121. سُلَيْمَانٌ

"Sulaymān" (proper noun, masculine) 122. خَالَ "uncle" (on the mother's

side) 123. خَالَه "uncle" (on the mother's side) 124. تَحْتَ "under (prep.)"

125. عَمِّي "uncle" (on the father's side) 126. عَمَّةٌ "aunt" (on the father's side).

Translate: 1. This dog is big. He is bigger than that (masc.) dog 2. I have an ass and he has a horse 3. The horse is bigger than the ass and the camel is bigger than the horse 4. Where is the director of the school? - He is in the room of the grand-father 5. What is thy (masc.) name? - my name is Sulaymān 6. I ate bread and meat and she drank milk 7. This camel is bigger and fatter than that camel 8. The barber is poorer than the blacksmith 9. The teacher is in the director's room (in the room of the director) 10. The blacksmith is in the new house 11. This elephant is big. He is bigger than my elephant 12. Where is the tailor? - he is in the house of the baker 13. Where is the new book? - the new book is on the table.

Twenty-seventh Lesson

1. الْأَزْنَبُ حَيَوَانٌ صَغِيرٌ 2. أَخِي كَانَ الْيَوْمَ فِي حَدِيثَةِ الْحَيَوَانَاتِ وَأَيُّ يَكُونُ هُنَاكَ غَدًا 3. مَا رَأَى أَخُوكَ فِي حَدِيثَةِ الْحَيَوَانَاتِ - أَخِي رَأَى هُنَاكَ أَسَدًا كَبِيرًا فِي قَفَصٍ كَبِيرٍ 4. أَكْتَبْتَ الْيَوْمَ - نَعَمْ كَتَبْتُ الْيَوْمَ 5. هَلْ فَتَحْتَ بَابَ الْكَرَمِ - لَا مَا فَتَحْتُهُ 6. هَلْ يَكُونُ أَخُوكَ غَدًا فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ - نَعَمْ هُوَ يَكُونُ غَدًا هُنَاكَ 7. مَا سَأَلْتَ الْخَبَّازَ وَمَا أَجَابَ - سَأَلْتُهُ مَتَى كَانَ فِي بَيْتِ الْخَلَالِ فَأَجَابَ أَنَّهُ كَانَ هُنَاكَ الْيَوْمَ 8. لِي صَدِيقٌ وَاسْمُهُ سَلِيمٌ 9. رَكِبْتُ أَيْ مَرَكَبًا فِي الْبَحْرِ وَأُورِكَ يَرْكَبُ مَرَكَبًا غَدًا 10. أَخِي رَكِبَ حِمَارًا وَأَخُوكَ رَكِبَ حَصَانًا 11. مَاتَ الْمَلَّاحُ فِي بَيْتِ صَدِيقِي 12. مَنْ رَأَى أَحَا الْمَلَّاحِ - أَبُو صَدِيقِي رَأَى أَحَا الْمَلَّاحِ 13. جَدِّي زَارَ أَبَا الْمُعَلِّمِ فِي يَافَا 14. لِسْمِ أَيْ الْمَعْلَمِ تَوَفَّقْتُ وَاسْمُ أَخِي الْمُدِيرِ زَيْدٌ.

Note : The nouns أَبٌ 'father'; أَخٌ 'brother', have the following forms before a genitive:

أَبُو الْجَارِ "the father of the neighbour"

أَخُو الْجَارِ "the brother of the neighbour"

رَأَيْتُ أَبَا الْجَارِ "I saw the father of the neighbour"

رَأَيْتُ أَخَا الْجَارِ "I saw the brother of the neighbour"

إِلَى أَبِي الْجَارِ "to the father of the neighbour"

إِلَى أَخِي الْجَارِ "to the brother of the neighbour"

and also: أَبُوكَ "thy (masc.) father"; أَخُوكَ "his brother";

رَأَيْتُ أَبَاكَ "I saw thy (masc.) father"; رَأَيْتُ أَخَاكَ "I saw

their (masc.) brother"; إِلَى أَبِيكَ "to thy (masc.) father"; إِلَى

أَخِيكَ "to your (masc.) brother".

Vocabulary: 127. حَيَوَانٌ "animal" 128. حَيْوَاتَانِ "animals"

يَكُونُ "is" 129. كَانَ "he was" 130. غَدًا "to-morrow" 131. the

"he will be" or "he is" 132. أَسَدٌ "lion" 133. قَفَصٌ "cage"

سَأَلَ "saw" 134. هَلْ "or" 135. نَعَمْ "yes" 136. لَا "no"

137. سَأَلَ "to ask" (imperfect) 138. أَجَابَ "he answered"
139. فِ "and" "and then" (see page 70 note 2) 140. أُنْ "that" (إِنِّي)
صَدِيقٌ 141. أَنَّهُ "that he" etc. 142. رَكِبَ "to ride"; "to sail"; "to navigate"
143. مَرْكَبٌ "a ship" (Note: رَكِبَ جَارًا "a friend"
and not: رَكِبَ (فِي مَرْكَبٍ) عَلَى جَارٍ "a sec"
145. مَاتَ "he died" 146. مَلَّاحٌ "sailor"; "mariner".

Translate: 1. Where is the brother of the director? — he is in this garden 2. I opened the door of the room 3. Where is my friend? — thy (mass.) friend is in the room of the grand-father 4. Their (mass.) father was to-day in the school 5. Her father rode an ass and her brother rode a horse 6. My uncle (on the mother's side) visited the father of the teacher 7. Who saw the brother of the tailor? — the brother of the blacksmith saw the brother of the tailor 8. The big lion is in a large cage 9. Has he written to-day? — yes, he has (written) 10. Did he open the door of the room? — yes, he opened.

Twenty-eighth Lesson

حَارِسُ الْأَسَدِ

كَانَ إِبْرَاهِيمُ فِي حَدِيثَةِ الْجَيَّوَانَاتِ وَرَأَى
هُنَاكَ أَسَدًا فِي قَفَصٍ كَبِيرٍ. فَسَأَلَ إِبْرَاهِيمَ حَارِسَ
الْأَسَدِ: هَلْ أَنْتَ حَارِسُ هَذَا الْأَسَدِ الْكَبِيرِ؟

فَأَجَابَ الْحَارِسُ: نَعَمْ

— وَمَنْ يَنْظِفُ الْقَفَصَ؟ — أَنَا.

— أَلَا تَخَافُ مِنَ الْأَسَدِ؟ — لَا.

— وَكَيْفَ ذَلِكَ؟ — وَقْتُمَا أَنْظِفُ هَذَا الْقَفَصَ يَكُونُ
الْأَسَدُ فِي ذَلِكَ الْقَفَصِ وَوَقْتُمَا أَنْظِفُ ذَلِكَ الْقَفَصَ
يَكُونُ الْأَسَدُ فِي هَذَا الْقَفَصِ.

اسْأَلْهُ: مَنْ كَانَ فِي حَدِيثَةِ الْجَيَّوَانَاتِ؟ مَا رَأَى
إِبْرَاهِيمُ فِي حَدِيثَةِ الْجَيَّوَانَاتِ؟ مَنْ يَنْظِفُ قَفَصَ
الْأَسَدِ؟ لِمَاذَا لَا يَخَافُ الْحَارِسُ؟

أَحْمَدُ وَالْمَلَّاحُ

سَأَلَ أَحْمَدُ مَلَّاحًا: أَيْنَ مَاتَ أَبُوكَ؟ — فَأَجَابَ

الْمَلَّاحُ: فِي مَرْكَبٍ كَانَ يَرْكَبُهُ فِي الْبَحْرِ.

وَأَيْنَ مَاتَ جَدُّكَ؟ — هُوَ أَيْضًا مَاتَ فِي مَرْكَبٍ

كَانَ يَرْكَبُهُ فِي الْبَحْرِ.

— وَلَا تَخَافُ أَنْ تَرْكَبَ مَرْكَبًا بَعْدَ ذَلِكَ؟

فَقَالَ الْمَلَّاحُ: أَيْنَ مَاتَ أَبُوكَ؟ - عَلَى فِرَاشِهِ.

- وَجَدَكَ؟ - عَلَى فِرَاشِهِ.

- وَأَنْتَ لَا تَخَافُ أَنْ تَنَامَ عَلَى الْفِرَاشِ بَعْدَ ذَلِكَ؟

السَّعَلَةُ: مَا سَأَلَ أَحَدُ الْمَلَّاحِ؟ مَا أَجَابَ الْمَلَّاحُ؟

أَيْنَ مَاتَ جَدُّ الْمَلَّاحِ؟ مَا سَأَلَ الْمَلَّاحُ أَحَدًا؟

Vocabulary: 147. نَظَّفَ "to clean
أَلَا (أَلَا) "to fear" 149. خَافَ "to fear" 150. كَيْفَ "how?" 151. وَفْتُ "time
يَخَافُ "does he not fear?" 152. سَمِعَ "heard" 153. (السَّعَلَةُ) "plur.
"while"; "during the time that" 154. (السَّعَلَةُ) "why?" ; "wherefore?"
155. نَامَ "to sleep" or: "I shall sleep".
156. فِرَاشٌ "bed", "mattress".

Note 1: كَانَ يَرْكَبُهُ is to be translated:
"in a ship that he sailed".

Note 2: The difference between وَ and فَ is that وَ joins two
words or independent sentences, while فَ indicates a development in the
narrative e.g.

بَشَرْتُ أَكَلَ فَشَرِبَ "he ate and then he drank";
بَشَرْتُ أَكَلَ وَشَرِبَ "he ate and drank".

In this sentence we do not know if he ate before and then drank, or the contrary.

ف is also used to join two sentences when there is a change of subject

Twenty-ninth Lesson

الْكِتَابُ (al-Kitāb)	"the book"
الْكِتَابُ الْكَبِيرُ (al-Kitābu-l-kabīr)	"the big book"
الدَّفْترُ (al-diftar)	"the copy-book"
الدَّفْترُ الصَّغِيرُ (al-diftaru-s-saghīr)	"the small copy-book"

If the article **ال** is attached to a noun or adjective

which begins with one of the letters **ت ذ ث**, then the **ل** of the article is not

pronounced (although it is written) and each of the above letters

that follows it, is doubled by **Tashdīd**. For example: الدَّفْترُ

pronounce: الدَّفْترُ الصَّغِيرُ "the copy-book"; pronounce:

الدَّفْترُ الصَّغِيرُ "the small"; "the little"; pronounce:

الدَّفْترُ الصَّغِيرُ "the small copy-book".

In this case the **ل** of the article **ال** is written without **Sukūn**.

1. هَذَا الدَّفْترُ كَبِيرٌ وَذَلِكَ الدَّفْترُ صَغِيرٌ 2. هَذَا

الدَّفْترُ الْكَبِيرُ مِنَ الْعَلِيِّ 3. مَنْ فَتَحَ الشَّجَرَةَ

الصَّغِيرَةَ 4. إِلَى أَيْنَ

تَذْهَبُ يَا عَمِّي؟ - أَذْهَبُ إِلَى الدَّكَانِ الْجَدِيدِ
و. كَانَتْ أُخْتِي فِي السُّوقِ الْجَدِيدِ 6. ذَهَبْتُ إِلَى
السُّوقِ فِي الصَّبَاحِ وَرَجَعْتُ مِنْ هُنَاكَ فِي الْمَسَاءِ
7. كَانَ أَبُو سَالِمٍ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ 8. مَا
شَرَبْتُ قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ وَمَا شَرَبْتُ بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ؟ -
شَرَبْتُ قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ فَنَجَّانَ حَلِيبٍ وَبَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ شَرَبْتُ
فَنَجَّانَ قَهْوَةٍ 9. هَذَا التِّلْمِيزُ اكْبَرُ مِنْ تِلْمِيزِ
اِخْتِي 10. أَيْنَ الثَّوْرُ السَّمِينُ؟ - الثَّوْرُ السَّمِينُ فِي
بُسْتَانِ النَّجَّارِ 11. رَأَى شَاكِرٌ عُصْفُورًا جَمِيلًا عَلَى
الشَّجَرَةِ 12. أَخِي شَرَبَ فَنَجَّانَ قَهْوَةٍ وَعَمِّي
شَرَبَ حَلِيبًا 13. أَيْنَ عُصْفُورُ مُحَمَّدٍ؟ - عُصْفُورُهُ
فِي قَفْصِ صَغِيرٍ 14. لِي تَعَلِّبُ وَأَرْزُبُ وَلَكَ
كَلْبٌ وَخَرُوفٌ 15. أَيْنَ الْمُصْغُورُ الصَّغِيرُ؟ -
الْمُصْغُورُ الصَّغِيرُ عَلَى الشَّجَرَةِ 16. أَيْنَ الْكَرْمُوسِيُّ
الْجَدِيدُ؟ - الْكَرْمُوسِيُّ الْجَدِيدُ تَحْتَ الشَّجَرَةِ.

Vocabulary: 156. ثَعْلَبٌ "fox" 157. دُكَّانٌ "shop"

158. سُوقٌ "market" 159. صَبَاحٌ "morning" 160. مَسَاءٌ "evening"

161. قَبْلَ "before" (prep.) 162. بَعْدَ "after" (prep.) 163. ظَهْرٌ

"midday" 164. قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ "fore-noon" 165. بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ "after-noon"

166. مُعْصُورٌ "coffee" 167. جَمِيلٌ "beautiful" 168. شَجَرَةٌ "tree".

169. ثَعْلَبٌ "fox" 170. دُكَّانٌ "shop"

171. قَبْلَ "before" (prep.) 172. بَعْدَ "after" (prep.) 173. ظَهْرٌ

"midday" 174. قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ "fore-noon" 175. بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ "after-noon"

176. مُعْصُورٌ "coffee" 177. جَمِيلٌ "beautiful" 178. شَجَرَةٌ "tree".

179. ثَعْلَبٌ "fox" 180. دُكَّانٌ "shop"

181. سُوقٌ "market" 182. صَبَاحٌ "morning" 183. مَسَاءٌ "evening"

184. قَبْلَ "before" (prep.) 185. بَعْدَ "after" (prep.) 186. ظَهْرٌ

"midday" 187. قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ "fore-noon" 188. بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ "after-noon"

189. مُعْصُورٌ "coffee" 190. جَمِيلٌ "beautiful" 191. شَجَرَةٌ "tree".

192. ثَعْلَبٌ "fox" 193. دُكَّانٌ "shop"

194. سُوقٌ "market" 195. صَبَاحٌ "morning" 196. مَسَاءٌ "evening"

197. قَبْلَ "before" (prep.) 198. بَعْدَ "after" (prep.) 199. ظَهْرٌ

"midday" 200. قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ "fore-noon" 201. بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ "after-noon"

202. مُعْصُورٌ "coffee" 203. جَمِيلٌ "beautiful" 204. شَجَرَةٌ "tree".

205. ثَعْلَبٌ "fox" 206. دُكَّانٌ "shop"

207. سُوقٌ "market" 208. صَبَاحٌ "morning" 209. مَسَاءٌ "evening"

210. قَبْلَ "before" (prep.) 211. بَعْدَ "after" (prep.) 212. ظَهْرٌ

"midday" 213. قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ "fore-noon" 214. بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ "after-noon"

215. مُعْصُورٌ "coffee" 216. جَمِيلٌ "beautiful" 217. شَجَرَةٌ "tree".

Thirtieth Lesson

أمثلة

1. كَلْبٌ جَيِّدٌ خَيْرٌ مِنْ أَسَدٍ مَيِّتٍ
2. عَدُوٌّ عَاقِلٌ خَيْرٌ مِنْ صَدِيقٍ جَاهِلٍ
3. عُصْفُورٌ فِي الْيَدِ وَلَا عَصِيرَةٌ عَلَى الشَّجَرَةِ
4. سَلَامَةٌ الْإِنْسَانِ فِي حِفْظِ اللِّسَانِ

المعلم وتلميذاته أو رسام

قَالَ الْمُعَلِّمُ لِسَلِيمٍ : ارْسُمْ يَا سَلِيمُ عَلَى الْأَوْفَحِ
جَارًا زَوْجَهُ وَلَدًا. فَرَسَمَ سَلِيمُ عَلَى الْأَوْفَحِ جَارًا
وَمَا رَسَمَ الْوَلَدَ.

الْمُعَلِّمُ : وَأَيْنَ الْوَلَدُ ؟ - سَلِيمٌ : نَزَلَ يَا مُعَلِّمِي.
السَّالِمَةُ : مَا قَالَ الْمُعَلِّمُ لِسَلِيمٍ ؟ مَا رَسَمَ سَلِيمُ ؟
مَا سَأَلَ الْمُعَلِّمُ سَلِيمًا ؟ مَا أَجَابَ سَلِيمُ ؟

Vocabulary: 169. مَثَلٌ (plural: امَثَالٌ) "example";

170. حَيٌّ "alive" 171. طَيِّبٌ "good" (خيرٌ مِنْ)

172. مَيِّتٌ "dead" 173. عَدُوٌّ "enemy",

174. "foe" 175. جَاهِلٌ "ignorant", "foolish"

176. يَدٌ "hand" 177. عَشْرَةٌ "ten" 178. سَلَامَةٌ "security",

179. إِنْسَانٌ "man", person" 180. حِفْظٌ "keeping"

181. لِسَانٌ "tongue", "language" 182. رَسَّامٌ "draughtsman"

183. اِرْسُمْ imperative of رَسَمَ 184. لَوْحٌ "blackboard"

185. نَزَلَ "to descend".

Thirty-first Lesson

"a big brother"	أَخٌ كَبِيرٌ
"a big sister"	أَخْتٌ كَبِيرَةٌ
"a new book"	كِتَابٌ جَدِيدٌ
"a new newspaper"	جَرِيدَةٌ جَدِيدَةٌ
"a clean hand"	يَدٌ نَظِيمَةٌ

In Arabic there are two genders: masculine and feminine.

Normally the male is masculine and the female is feminine

e. g. أَبٌ "father", أُمٌّ "mother".

But in Arabic the genders in grammar must not be connected with the sexes: things without life, and without sex are still treated as masculine or feminine.

The nouns which denote inanimate things are feminine:

1) when they end in ة. For example: جَرِيدَةٌ "a newspaper";

سَفِينَةٌ "a ship".

2) when they are names of lands and cities. For example: ^{مِصْرٌ}يَافَا "Egypt", ^{مِصْرٌ}يَافَا "Jaffa".

3) when they denote the parts of the body which are in pairs.

For example: يَدٌ "hand", رِجْلٌ "foot", عَيْنٌ "eye" etc.

Note: The following nouns are feminine without a special ending:

أَرْضٌ "earth", بئرٌ "well", حَرْبٌ "war", خَمْرٌ "wine".

دَار "house", رِيح "wind", شَمْس "sun".

If the noun is feminine, the descriptive adjective which follows it must be feminine also, the feminine being usually formed by adding the ending ة to the masculine. For example:

(كِتَابٌ نَظِيفٌ) "a clean room" غُرْفَةٌ نَظِيفَةٌ
(بَيْتٌ صَغِيرٌ) "a small ship" سَفِينَةٌ صَغِيرَةٌ

1. مَتَى طَلَعَ أَخُوكَ الْجَبَلِ وَمَتَى نَزَلَ مِنْهُ؟
- أَخِي طَلَعَ الْجَبَلِ قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ 2. مَا أَكَلَ أَخُوكَ وَنَا أَكَلْتُ اخْتُكَ؟- أَخِي أَكَلَ خُبْزًا وَقِطْعَةً جُزْئِي 3. أَيْنَ لَحْمٍ وَأَخِي أَكَلْتُ خُبْزًا وَقِطْعَةً جُزْئِي 4. لَجَدْتِي هِرَّةً خَالِي؟- هِيَ فِي الْغُرْفَةِ الصَّغِيرَةِ 5. هَذِهِ الْيَدُ وَقَرْدٌ. الْقَرْدُ أَكْبَرُ مِنَ الْفَرَسِ 6. هَذِهِ الرَّجُلُ نَظِيفٌ وَتِلْكَ الْيَدُ وَسِخَةٌ 7. مَنْ أَخَذَ جَرِيدَةَ الْمَسْعَمِ؟- تِلْكَ الرَّجُلُ وَسِخَةٌ 8. هَلْ تَعْرِفُ إِنَّا سَلِيمٌ؟- لَا لَا أَعْرِفُ 9. مَنْ رَفَعَ هَذِهِ الْجَرِيدَةَ مِنَ الْأَرْضِ؟-

- أَنَا رَفَعْتُهَا 10. وَجَدْتُ أَخِي جُوزَةً عَلَى الْأَرْضِ وَرَفَعَهَا
11. سَلِيمٌ رَفَعَ هَذِهِ الْجُوزَةَ مِنَ الْأَرْضِ 12. أَيْنَ جَرِيدَةُ أَخِي؟- أَخَذَهَا إِبْرَاهِيمُ وَوَضَعَهَا عَلَى الْمَائِدَةِ الْكَبِيرَةِ 13. أَيْنَ أَخِي الصَّغِيرُ؟- هُوَ فِي النَّابَةِ 14. أَخُوكَ يَلْعَبُ مَعَ أَخِي فِي النَّابَةِ 15. لَعِبَ أَحْمَدُ مَعَ أَخِي فِي النَّابَةِ.

Vocabulary: 186. طَلَعَ "to mount", "to rise", "to go up"

جَبَلٌ 187. "mountain", "mount" 188. قِطْعَةٌ "a piece" 189. جُزْئِي "part"

قَرْدٌ 190. "cat" 191. هِرَّةٌ "a she-cat" 192. لَحْمٌ "meat"

تِلْكَ 193. هَذِهِ "this (fem.)" 194. تِلْكَ "that (fem.)"

تِلْكَ الْبَقَرَةُ "this cow", هَذِهِ الْبَقَرَةُ "that cow"

رَجُلٌ 195. نَظِيفٌ "clean" 196. وَسِخٌ "dirty" 197. جَرِيدَةُ الْمَسْعَمِ "a stick of the masam"

أَخَذَ 198. "to take" 199. عَرَفَ "to know" (Imperf. "أَعْرِفُ")

رَفَعَ 200. "to lift up" (Imperf. "أَرْفَعُ") 201. أَرْضٌ "earth", "land"

جُوزَةٌ 202. "nut" 203. وَضَعَ "to put" 204. غَابَةُ "forest"

لَعِبَ 205. (Imperf. "لَعَبُ") "to play".

Translate: 1. This school is small and that school is big 2. Where is the she-cat of the sister? — her she-cat is in that room 3. This room is big and that room is small 4. Does thy (masc.) brother know where is the director of this school? — no, he does not know where he is 5. This fact is clean and that fact is dirty 6. The room of the sister is clean and the room of the brother is dirty 7. This cow is fat 8. That dog is bigger than this dog 9. That cow is big and this cow is small 10. Who was in this room and who was in that room? — Thy (masc.) brother was in this room and his brother was in that room.

Thirty-second Lesson

A

"two big asses"	حَمَارَانِ كَبِيرَانِ (1)	حَمَارٌ كَبِيرٌ
"the two big asses"	الْحَمَارَانِ الْكَبِيرَانِ	"a big ass"
"these two big asses"	هَذَانِ الْحَمَارَانِ	
"two big cows"	بَقَرَتَانِ كَبِيرَتَانِ (2)	بَقَرَةٌ كَبِيرَةٌ
"these two cows"	هَئَانِ الْبَقَرَتَانِ	"a big cow"

(1) There are three numbers in Arabic: Singular, Dual (which denotes the number **two** of things) and Plural (see below page 90).

The Dual is expressed by adding of the termination **انِ** to the singular, thus:

الْكَلْبَانِ (كَلْبٌ "a dog") "two dogs", كَلْبَانِ "the two dogs", كَبِيرَانِ "two big dogs", هَذَانِ الْكَلْبَانِ "these two dogs".

(2) Nouns ending in **ة** (Tā Marbūṭa see above 31 (33)) change the **ة**

into **تِ** (Tā Tawīla) before the Dual-termination e.g. **بَقَرَتَانِ** "two big cows" (بَقَرَةٌ "a cow") **بَقَرَتَانِ كَبِيرَتَانِ** "these two cows".

B

"the possessor of two asses" (1)	صَاحِبُ حَمَارَيْنِ كَبِيرَيْنِ
"from these two asses"	مِنْ هَؤُلَاءِ الْحَمَارَيْنِ
"on these two cows"	عَلَى هَؤُلَاءِ الْبَقَرَتَيْنِ
"I saw the two big asses"	رَأَيْتُ الْحَمَارَيْنِ الْكَبِيرَتَيْنِ
"I saw these two cows"	رَأَيْتُ هَؤُلَاءِ الْبَقَرَتَيْنِ

(1) The Dual takes the termination **انِ** for the Nominative and the

termination **َيْنِ** for both the Genitive and the Accusative

(see above lesson 25) e.g.:

الْكَلْبَانِ فِي الْبُسْتَانِ "the two dogs are in the garden"

صَاحِبُ الْبَيْتَيْنِ "the possessor of the two houses"

رَأَيْتُ الْبَقَرَتَيْنِ "in the two houses"

رَأَيْتُ الْبَقَرَتَيْنِ "I saw the two cows"

رَأَيْتُ هَؤُلَاءِ الْبَقَرَتَيْنِ "I saw these two cows"

C

"the two asses of the baker"	حَمَارَا الْخَبَّازِ (1)
"the two big asses of the baker"	حَمَارَا الْخَبَّازِ الْكَبِيرَانِ
"his two asses"	حَمَارَاهُ
"his two big asses"	حَمَارَاهُ الْكَبِيرَانِ
"on the two asses of my brother"	عَلَى حَمَارَيَّ أَخِي
"from thy (masc.) two asses"	مِنْ حَمَارَيْكَ
"I saw thy (masc.) two asses"	رَأَيْتُ حَمَارَيْكَ

(1) The final ن (ni) of the Dual-termination falls out when the Dual is followed by the Genitive. For example:

حَمَارَا الْخَبَّازِ "the **two** asses of the baker"

فِي مَسْتَانِي أَخِي "in the **two** gardens of my brother"

رَأَيْتُ حَمَارَيَّ أَخِي "I saw the **two** asses of my brother"

بَقَرَتَا الْخَبَّازِ الْكَبِيرَتَانِ "the **two** big cows of the baker"

(see above page 63, note 1).

and also: حَمَارَاكَ "thy (masc.) **two** asses";

حَمَارَاهُ الْكَبِيرَانِ "his **two** big asses";

رَأَيْتُ حَمَارَيْكَ "I saw thy (masc.) **two** asses";

Note 1: كَتَبْتُمَا "you (masc. and fem.) **two** have written" (see above page 28).

كَتَبَا "they (masc.) **two** have written" (see above).

كَتَبَتَا "they (fem.) **two** have written" (see above).

Note 2: تَكْتُبَانِ "you (masc. and fem.) **two** will write" or: "you **two** write" (see above page 48).

يَكْتُبَانِ "they (masc. and fem.) **two** will write" or: "they **two** write".

For the first person there is no special Dual

form e. g. كَتَبْنَا "we **two** have written" or: "we

(more than two) have written" (see above p. 28), نَكْتُبُ

"we **two** shall write" or: "we (more than two) shall write" (see above page 48).

Note 3: لَكُمَا "you (masc. and fem.) **two** have" (see above page 15).

لَهُمَا "they (masc. and fem.) **two** have".

لَكُمَا "your (Dual masc. and fem.) book".

لَهُمَا "their (Dual masc. and fem.) book" (see above page 22).

Thirty-third Lesson

1. لِي ثَوْرَانِ كَبِيرَانِ وَالْأَقْبَرَانِ كَبِيرَتَانِ

2. كَلْبَا أَخِي كَبِيرَانِ وَكَلْبَا جَدِّي صَغِيرَانِ 3. بَقَرَتَاكَ

صَغِيرَتَانِ وَبَقَرَتَاهُ كَبِيرَتَانِ ٤. أَخِي قَسَمَ قِطْعَتَهُ
الْجَبْنِ إِلَى قِسْمَيْنِ. هُوَ أَكَلَ الْقِسْمَ الْأَوَّلَ وَأَخْتِي
أَكَلَتِ الْقِسْمَ الْآخَرَ ٥. إِشْتَرَيْتُ الْيَوْمَ بَقَرَتَيْنِ
بَقْرَةً وَاحِدَةً قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ وَبَقْرَةً وَاحِدَةً بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ.
الْبَقَرَةُ الْأُولَى صَغِيرَةٌ وَالْآخَرَى كَبِيرَةٌ ٦. هَذَا
الْخِطَاطُ كَبِيرُ السِّنِّ. هُوَ أَكْبَرُ سِنًّا مِنْ ذَلِكَ
الْخِطَاطِ ٧. هَذَانِ الْكَبَابَانِ صَغِيرَانِ وَهَئَانِ الْبَقَرَتَانِ
كَبِيرَتَانِ ٨. الْخُبْزُ الَّذِي اشْتَرَيْتَ فِي السُّوقِ
الْجَدِيدِ أَرْخَصُ مِنَ الْخُبْزِ الَّذِي اشْتَرَيْتَ فِي
الْمَدِينَةِ ٩. مَنْ فَلَاحَ الْجُوزَةِ الَّتِي كَانَتْ عَلَى
الْمَائِدَةِ فِي عُرْفَتِي وَمَنْ أَكَلَ لُبًّا ١٠ - سَلِمَ فَلَمَّا
وَأَكَلَ لُبًّا ١١. هَئَانِ الْجَرِيدَتَانِ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ
كَرْمِي أَخِي ١٢. هَئَانِ الْخَمَارَانِ أَصْغَرُ مِنْ
جَرِيدَتِي زَيْدِ
خَمَارِكَ ١٣. لَنَا كَرْمَانِ وَلَكُمْ بَيْتَانِ

Vocabulary: 206
div "to divide" (Imperf *dividi*)

207. ^{فَـ}أَوَّلُ ^{فَـ}أَوَّلُ "first" (fem) 208. ^{فَـ}تَسْمِ "part" (fem) 209. ^{فَـ}آخِرُ "other" (fem) 210. ^{فَـ}أَشْتَرَى "he bought" (fem) 211. ^{فَـ}وَاحِدٌ "one" (fem) 212. ^{فَـ}سِنَّ "age", "tooth" (fem) 213. ^{فَـ}كَبِيرُ ^{فَـ}السِّنِّ "old" (fem) 214. ^{فَـ}هَذَانِ "these two" (fem) 215. ^{فَـ}الَّذِي "which", "who" (fem) 216. ^{فَـ}فَلَقَ "to split" (fem) 217. ^{فَـ}لَبُّ "marrow", "core" (fem)
- Note: ^{فَـ}أَكْبَرُ "is (masc. and fem.) bigger" and also: "are (masc. and fem.) bigger"

Thirty-fourth Lesson

1. قَسَمَ إِبْرَاهِيمُ قِطْعَةً لِّلْحَمِّ إِلَى قِسْمَيْنِ. ثُمَّ
وَضَعَ كُلَّ وَاحِدٍ مِّنَ الْقِسْمَيْنِ فِي كَهْفَةٍ مِّنَ الْمِرْيَانِ
2. مِيزَانَ أَخِي أَكْبَرُ مِيزَانَ جَدِّكَ 3. مَا
فَعَلْتَ بِالْمُسْكِرِ الَّذِي اشْتَرَيْتَ فِي السُّوقِ الْجَدِيدِ؟
قَسَمْتُهِ أَوْ لَا إِلَى قِسْمَيْنِ ثُمَّ وَضَعْتُ كُلَّ وَاحِدٍ
مِّنَ الْقِسْمَيْنِ عَلَى الْمَائِدَةِ فِي عُرْفَتِي 4. لَا أَخِي

تَوَرَّانِ سَيِّئَانِ وَلِي بَقَرَتَانِ سَيِّئَتَانِ ٥. قَالَ أَبُوكَ
لِأَخِيكَ ارْهَسْ لِي سَيَّارَتَيْنِ قَرَسَمَ أَخُوكَ سَيَّارَتَيْنِ
6. ذَهَبَ أَخِي وَأَخِي إِلَى الْمَدْرَسَةِ قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ
وَرَجَعَا مِنْ هُنَاكَ بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ ٧. أَيْنَ أَخِي وَأَخِيكَ؟
- هُمَا ذَهَبَا إِلَى الْمَدْرَسَةِ 8. مِنْ أَيْنَ رَجَعْنَا أَنَا وَأَخِي؟
- أَتَيْنَا رَجَعْنَا مِنَ الْمَدْرَسَةِ ٩. هَذَا الْكِتَابُ
رَخِيصٌ وَذَلِكَ الْكِتَابُ ارْخَصْ مِنْهُ بِهَلِيلٍ ١٠. أَنَا
شَرِبْتُ قَلِيلًا مِنَ الْحَلِيبِ وَأَكَلْتُ قَلِيلًا مِنَ
الْخُبْزِ وَأَخِي أَكَلَ وَشَرِبَ أَكْثَرَ مِنِّي ١١. بَيْنَا أَخِي
الْجَدِيدَانِ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ بَيْتِي سَلِيمٌ بِكْثِيرٍ ١٢. أَخْنَأُ
سَلِيمٌ كَثِينًا وَقَرَأْنَا الْيَوْمَ كَثِيرًا ١٣. مَا ذَهَبْتُ
الْيَوْمَ إِلَى الْمَدْرَسَةِ لِأَنَّ أَبِي مَرِيضٌ ١٤. أَخِي مَا
ذَهَبَ الْيَوْمَ إِلَى الْمَدْرَسَةِ لِأَنَّهُ مَرِيضٌ ١٥. مَا
أَكَلْتُ قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ؟ - أَكَلْتُ خُبْزًا وَقِطْعَةً لَحْمٍ

Vocabulary: 218 كلُّهُمَّ "all", "whole"

"every" كلُّ الْبَيْتِ (the whole house) or أَكْبَرُ مِنْ كَثِيرٍ

كُلُّ بَيْتٍ makes the next noun to be in the genitive e. g. كَفَّةٌ

220 "a scale of a balance", 221 مِيزَانٌ "balance",

222 فَعَلَ "to do", 223 بِ "with", "by", "in", (يَ) "with me",

أَوْ لَا 224 سَكَّرَ "sugar", 225 أَوْ لَا 226 سَيَّارَةٌ "automobile", 227 هُمَا "they (Dual masc. and

fem.)", 228 أَنْتُمَا "you (Dual masc and fem.)", 229 قَلِيلٌ "a little",

230 أَكْثَرُ مِنْ "much", (أَكْثَرُ مِنْ) "more than": 231 لِأَنَّ

"because", 232 مَرِيضٌ "ill", "sick". 233 قَالَ "he said",

(أَقُولُ (imperfect : 234

Translate: 1. The two dogs of my brother are in the garden of thy (masc.) sister 2. The two big hares are in the vineyard of the uncle (on the father's side) 3. I have two houses and my father too has two houses. His two houses are in the new market- 4. The two cows of my grand-mother are fatter than the two cows of the tailor 5. Where are the two newspapers of the director ? - They (two) are on the table in the room of the father 6. The house of the baker and his garden 7. Her two oxen are bigger than his two oxen 8. The two dogs of the tailor and his two hares 9. The two asses of my aunt (on the mother's side) and her two camels 10. He has one ass and two oxen and we have two asses and one ox.

Thirty-fifth Lesson

هَرْتَانِ وَفَرْدٌ

هَرْتَانِ وَفَرْدَانِ قِطْمَةً جُبْنَ وَذَهَبًا بِهَا إِلَى الْفَرْدِ
كَيْ يَفْسِمَهَا بَيْنَهُمَا. فَأَخَذَ الْفَرْدُ الْجُبْنَ بِنَظَرٍ وَقَسَمَهَا
إِلَى قِسْمَيْنِ أَحَدَهُمَا أَكْبَرُ مِنَ الْآخَرِ. ثُمَّ وَضَعَ كُلَّ
وَاحِدٍ مِنَ الْقِسْمَيْنِ فِي كَفَّةٍ مِنْ مِيزَانِهِ. فَرَجَعَ
الْقِسْمُ الْأَكْبَرُ. فَأَخَذَ مِنْهُ قَلِيلًا بِأَسْنَانِهِ وَأَكَلَهُ
وَقَالَ: أَرِيدُ أَنْ أَسَاوِيَهُ بِالْأَصْغَرِ. وَلَكِنْ إِذْ كَانَ
مَا أَخَذَهُ مِنْهُ أَكْثَرَ مِنَ الْأَكْثَرِ رَجَعَ الْأَصْغَرُ.
فَفَعَلَ بِهَذَا مَا فَعَلَهُ بِذَلِكَ ثُمَّ فَعَلَ بِذَلِكَ مَا فَعَلَهُ
بِهَذَا وَمَا زَالَ يَأْكُلُ حَتَّى رَجَعَ مِنَ الْقِسْمَيْنِ حَتَّى
أَكَلَ الْجُبْنَ كُلَّهُ.

أَسْأَلُكَ: الْهَرْتَانِ مَا وَجَدْتَاهُ، إِلَى مَنْ ذَهَبْتَاهُ،
لَمَّا ذَهَبْتَا بِالْجُبْنَةِ إِلَى الْفَرْدِ، مَا فَعَلَ الْفَرْدُ
بِالْجُبْنَةِ، فِي مَا وَضَعَ كُلَّ وَاحِدٍ مِنَ الْقِسْمَيْنِ،

لَمَّا رَجَعَ أَحَدُ الْقِسْمَيْنِ، لَمَّا أَكَلَ مِنَ الْقِسْمِ
الْأَكْبَرِ، لَمَّا أَكَلَ مِنَ الْقِسْمِ الْآخَرِ، هَلْ
بَقِيَ شَيْءٌ مِنَ الْجُبْنَةِ؟

كَيْ يَفْسِمَ / "in order that" 234. كَيْ

"in order that he divide" 235. بَيْنَ "between" 236. "a

piece of cheese" 237. أَحَدَهُمَا "one of them (dual)" 238.

رَجَعَ "to outweigh" 239. سِنِينَ "tooth" (plural: "أسنان") 240. أَرَادَ "to

wish", "to desire" (imperfect: "أريد") 241. "to make equal"

imperfect: "أساوي" 242. لَكِنَّ (لَكِنْ) "but" 243. (followed by a verb) "since", "because" 244.

"but" 243. "until" 247. "necessary" 245. "to cease" 246. "until"

"necessary" 245. "to cease" 246. "until"

Thirty-sixth Lesson

الْوَلَلَاتُ وَالْجُوزَةُ

وَلَدَانِ صَغِيرَانِ وَجَدَا جُوزَةً تَحْتَ شَجَرَةٍ جُوزِ
وَقَالَ أَحَدُهُمَا: هَذِهِ جُوزَتِي لِأَنِّي رَأَيْتُهَا أَوَّلًا. فَقَالَ
الْآخَرُ: لَا بَلْ هِيَ لِي لِأَنِّي رَفَعْتُهَا مِنَ الْأَرْضِ.

فَتَسَاجَرَ عَلَى ذَلِكَ مُسَاجِرَةً شَدِيدَةً. وَبَيْنَمَا هُمَا فِي هَذِهِ الْمُسَاجِرَةِ فَإِذَا بَوَلَّ آخَرَ قَدْ تَقَرَّبَ مِنْهُمَا. وَكَانَ هَذَا الْوَلَدُ أَكْبَرَ مِنْهُمَا سِنًا وَقَالَ لَهُمَا: أَنَا أَوْفَقُ بَيْنَكُمَا. قَوَّفَ بَيْنَهُمَا وَبَعْدَ مَا سَمِعَ طَلِبَةً كُلِّ وَاحِدٍ مِنْهُمَا فَلَقَّ الْجُوزَةَ وَقَالَ: الْقِسْرَةُ الْأُولَى لِي لَسِ رَأَى الْجُوزَةَ أَوْ لَا وَالْقِسْرَةُ الْآخَرَى لِي لَسِ رَفْعًا مِنَ الْأَرْضِ. أَمَّا اللَّبُّ فَهُوَ لِي جَزَاءُ الْقَضَاءِ.

سُئِلَ: الْوَلَدَانِ الصَّغِيرَانِ مَا وَجَدَا؟ أَيْنَ وَجَدَا الْجُوزَةَ؟ مَا قَالَ أَحَدُهُمَا وَمَا قَالَ الْآخَرُ؟ مَتَى تَقَرَّبَ مِنْهُمَا وَلَدٌ آخَرُ؟ أَكَانَ هَذَا الْوَلَدُ أَصْغَرَ سِنًا مِنْهُمَا؟ مَا قَالَ لَهُمَا؟ بَعْدَ مَا سَمِعَ طَلِبَةً كُلِّ وَاحِدٍ مِنْهُمَا مَا فَعَلَ؟ كَيْفَ وَفَّقَ بَيْنَهُمَا؟

Vocabulary: 248. جُوزٌ "nut" 249. الثَّانِي "the second" 250. مُسَاجِرَةٌ "quarrel" 251. تَسَاجَرَ "to quarrel" 252. مُسَاجِرَةٌ "quarrel" 250.

253. شَدِيدٌ "strong"; "violent" 254. بَيْنَمَا "while" 255. إِذَا (to) "when"; "if" 256. إِذَا بَوَلَّ "see!"; "behold!" (by a verb) 257. قَدْ is a particle which is often put before the perfect to express the completion or certainty of the action and can sometimes be translated "directly" but often it is to be left untranslated 258. تَقَرَّبَ مِنْ "approach" 259. وَفَّقَ (بَيْنَ) "to reconcile" (Imperf.: وَفَّقَ) 260. قَوَّفَ "to stand" 261. سَمِعَ "to hear" (Imperf.: سَمِعَ) 262. طَلِبَةً "demand"; "request" 263. قِسْرَةً "rind"; "shell" 264. أَمَّا "as for"; "as to" 265. جَزَاءُ "reward" 266. قَضَاءُ "judgment".

Translate: 1. My brother stood between the grand-

father and the sister 2. What did he hear in the room of the director?— he heard there that thou (masc.) art ill 3. My sister took the meat and divided it in two parts 4. Where is the new book which I bought in the new shop?— thy (masc.) sister put it on the new table 5. thy (fem.) two cows are fatter than the two cows of my grand-mother 6. His two houses are nearer than thy (masc.) two houses 7. I have two new books and he too has two new books 8. Where are the two asses?— They (dual) are in the garden 9. Where are the two new houses of the tailor?— they (dual) are in the new market. 10. We have two oxen and she also has two oxen. 11. My two asses are bigger than the two asses of my brother. 12. When did thy (masc.) teacher visit our uncle (on the mother's side)?— he visited him in the after-noon 13. Her grand-mother visited to-day the mother of the teacher 14. Where did you (masc.) learn the Arabic language?— I learned it in school.

Thirty-seventh Lesson

A

"bakers"	خَبَّازُونَ (1)
"the bakers"	الْخَبَّازُونَ
"these bakers"	هَؤُلَاءِ الْخَبَّازُونَ
"the house of the bakers"	بَيْتُ الْخَبَّازِينَ (2)
"I saw the bakers"	رَأَيْتُ الْخَبَّازِينَ
"the teachers of my brother"	مُعَلِّمُو أَخِي (3)
"to the teachers of my brother"	إِلَى مُعَلِّمِي أَخِي
"I saw the teachers of my brother"	رَأَيْتُ مُعَلِّمِي أَخِي
"thy (masc.) teachers"	مُعَلِّمُواكَ
"the room of thy (masc.) teachers"	غُرْفَةُ مُعَلِّمِكَ
"I saw thy (masc.) teachers"	رَأَيْتُ مُعَلِّمَكَ

(1) The plural of masculines is formed by adding to the singular the termination **ُونَ** thus: **خَبَّازُونَ** "bakers" (baker)

(2) The plural of masculines has the termination **ِينَ** for the Nominative and the termination **ِينَ** for the Genitive and

Accusative (See above Lesson 32 B. (1)) e. g.

الْخَبَّازُونَ فِي الْبُسْتَانِ "the bakers are in the garden";

بَيْتُ الْخَبَّازِينَ "the house of the bakers";

رَأَيْتُ الْخَبَّازِينَ "I saw the bakers".

(3) The final **نَ** (no) of the plural masculine termination is omitted when the plural is followed by a genitive e. g.

مُعَلِّمُو أَخِي "the teachers of my brother" (and also:

مُعَلِّمُوا أَخِي (1) after the و);

غُرْفَةُ مُعَلِّمِي أَخِي "the room of the teachers of my brother";

رَأَيْتُ مُعَلِّمِي أَخِي "I saw the teachers of my brother".

and also: مُعَلِّمُوهُ "his teachers"; غُرْفَةُ مُعَلِّمِكَ "the room of thy (masc.) teachers" etc.

B

"(female) teachers"	مُعَلِّمَاتُ (1)
"the (female) teachers"	الْمُعَلِّمَاتُ
"from the (female) teachers"	مِنْ الْمُعَلِّمَاتِ (2)
"her (female) teachers"	مُعَلِّمَاتِهَا

(1) The plural of feminine nouns is formed by changing **ة**

into e.g. ²مُعلِّمات (female) teachers" (singular: ²مُعلِّمة)

(2) The plural of the femines has the termination اَت for the Nominative and the termination اِ for the Genitive and Accusative e. g.

الْمُعَلِّمَاتُ فِي الْمُحَدِّثَةِ "the (female) teachers are in the room";

١٤٢
 ١٤٣
 ١٤٤
 ١٤٥
 ١٤٦
 ١٤٧
 ١٤٨
 ١٤٩
 ١٥٠
 ١٥١
 ١٥٢
 ١٥٣
 ١٥٤
 ١٥٥
 ١٥٦
 ١٥٧
 ١٥٨
 ١٥٩
 ١٦٠
 ١٦١
 ١٦٢
 ١٦٣
 ١٦٤
 ١٦٥
 ١٦٦
 ١٦٧
 ١٦٨
 ١٦٩
 ١٧٠
 ١٧١
 ١٧٢
 ١٧٣
 ١٧٤
 ١٧٥
 ١٧٦
 ١٧٧
 ١٧٨
 ١٧٩
 ١٨٠
 ١٨١
 ١٨٢
 ١٨٣
 ١٨٤
 ١٨٥
 ١٨٦
 ١٨٧
 ١٨٨
 ١٨٩
 ١٩٠
 ١٩١
 ١٩٢
 ١٩٣
 ١٩٤
 ١٩٥
 ١٩٦
 ١٩٧
 ١٩٨
 ١٩٩
 ٢٠٠
 ٢٠١
 ٢٠٢
 ٢٠٣
 ٢٠٤
 ٢٠٥
 ٢٠٦
 ٢٠٧
 ٢٠٨
 ٢٠٩
 ٢١٠
 ٢١١
 ٢١٢
 ٢١٣
 ٢١٤
 ٢١٥
 ٢١٦
 ٢١٧
 ٢١٨
 ٢١٩
 ٢٢٠
 ٢٢١
 ٢٢٢
 ٢٢٣
 ٢٢٤
 ٢٢٥
 ٢٢٦
 ٢٢٧
 ٢٢٨
 ٢٢٩
 ٢٣٠
 ٢٣١
 ٢٣٢
 ٢٣٣
 ٢٣٤
 ٢٣٥
 ٢٣٦
 ٢٣٧
 ٢٣٨
 ٢٣٩
 ٢٤٠
 ٢٤١
 ٢٤٢
 ٢٤٣
 ٢٤٤
 ٢٤٥
 ٢٤٦
 ٢٤٧
 ٢٤٨
 ٢٤٩
 ٢٥٠
 ٢٥١
 ٢٥٢
 ٢٥٣
 ٢٥٤
 ٢٥٥
 ٢٥٦
 ٢٥٧
 ٢٥٨
 ٢٥٩
 ٢٦٠
 ٢٦١
 ٢٦٢
 ٢٦٣
 ٢٦٤
 ٢٦٥
 ٢٦٦
 ٢٦٧
 ٢٦٨
 ٢٦٩
 ٢٧٠
 ٢٧١
 ٢٧٢
 ٢٧٣
 ٢٧٤
 ٢٧٥
 ٢٧٦
 ٢٧٧
 ٢٧٨
 ٢٧٩
 ٢٨٠
 ٢٨١
 ٢٨٢
 ٢٨٣
 ٢٨٤
 ٢٨٥
 ٢٨٦
 ٢٨٧
 ٢٨٨
 ٢٨٩
 ٢٩٠
 ٢٩١
 ٢٩٢
 ٢٩٣
 ٢٩٤
 ٢٩٥
 ٢٩٦
 ٢٩٧
 ٢٩٨
 ٢٩٩
 ٣٠٠
 ٣٠١
 ٣٠٢
 ٣٠٣
 ٣٠٤
 ٣٠٥
 ٣٠٦
 ٣٠٧
 ٣٠٨
 ٣٠٩
 ٣١٠
 ٣١١
 ٣١٢
 ٣١٣
 ٣١٤
 ٣١٥
 ٣١٦
 ٣١٧
 ٣١٨
 ٣١٩
 ٣٢٠
 ٣٢١
 ٣٢٢
 ٣٢٣
 ٣٢٤
 ٣٢٥
 ٣٢٦
 ٣٢٧
 ٣٢٨
 ٣٢٩
 ٣٣٠
 ٣٣١
 ٣٣٢
 ٣٣٣
 ٣٣٤
 ٣٣٥
 ٣٣٦
 ٣٣٧
 ٣٣٨
 ٣٣٩
 ٣٤٠
 ٣٤١
 ٣٤٢
 ٣٤٣
 ٣٤٤
 ٣٤٥
 ٣٤٦
 ٣٤٧
 ٣٤٨
 ٣٤٩
 ٣٥٠
 ٣٥١
 ٣٥٢
 ٣٥٣
 ٣٥٤
 ٣٥٥
 ٣٥٦
 ٣٥٧
 ٣٥٨
 ٣٥٩
 ٣٦٠
 ٣٦١
 ٣٦٢
 ٣٦٣
 ٣٦٤
 ٣٦٥
 ٣٦٦
 ٣٦٧
 ٣٦٨
 ٣٦٩
 ٣٧٠
 ٣٧١
 ٣٧٢
 ٣٧٣
 ٣٧٤
 ٣٧٥
 ٣٧٦
 ٣٧٧
 ٣٧٨
 ٣٧٩
 ٣٨٠
 ٣٨١
 ٣٨٢
 ٣٨٣
 ٣٨٤
 ٣٨٥
 ٣٨٦
 ٣٨٧
 ٣٨٨
 ٣٨٩
 ٣٩٠
 ٣٩١
 ٣٩٢
 ٣٩٣
 ٣٩٤
 ٣٩٥
 ٣٩٦
 ٣٩٧
 ٣٩٨
 ٣٩٩
 ٤٠٠
 ٤٠١
 ٤٠٢
 ٤٠٣
 ٤٠٤
 ٤٠٥
 ٤٠٦
 ٤٠٧
 ٤٠٨
 ٤٠٩
 ٤١٠
 ٤١١
 ٤١٢
 ٤١٣
 ٤١٤
 ٤١٥
 ٤١٦
 ٤١٧
 ٤١٨
 ٤١٩
 ٤٢٠
 ٤٢١
 ٤٢٢
 ٤٢٣
 ٤٢٤
 ٤٢٥
 ٤٢٦
 ٤٢٧
 ٤٢٨
 ٤٢٩
 ٤٣٠
 ٤٣١
 ٤٣٢
 ٤٣٣
 ٤٣٤
 ٤٣٥
 ٤٣٦
 ٤٣٧
 ٤٣٨
 ٤٣٩
 ٤٤٠
 ٤٤١
 ٤٤٢
 ٤٤٣
 ٤٤٤
 ٤٤٥
 ٤٤٦
 ٤٤٧
 ٤٤٨
 ٤٤٩
 ٤٥٠
 ٤٥١
 ٤٥٢
 ٤٥٣
 ٤٥٤
 ٤٥٥
 ٤٥٦
 ٤٥٧
 ٤٥٨
 ٤٥٩
 ٤٦٠
 ٤٦١
 ٤٦٢
 ٤٦٣
 ٤٦٤
 ٤٦٥
 ٤٦٦
 ٤٦٧
 ٤٦٨
 ٤٦٩
 ٤٧٠
 ٤٧١
 ٤٧٢
 ٤٧٣
 ٤٧٤
 ٤٧٥
 ٤٧٦
 ٤٧٧
 ٤٧٨
 ٤٧٩
 ٤٨٠
 ٤٨١
 ٤٨٢
 ٤٨٣
 ٤٨٤
 ٤٨٥
 ٤٨٦
 ٤٨٧
 ٤٨٨
 ٤٨٩
 ٤٩٠
 ٤٩١
 ٤٩٢
 ٤٩٣
 ٤٩٤
 ٤٩٥
 ٤٩٦
 ٤٩٧
 ٤٩٨
 ٤٩٩
 ٥٠٠
 ٥٠١
 ٥٠٢
 ٥٠٣
 ٥٠٤
 ٥٠٥
 ٥٠٦
 ٥٠٧
 ٥٠٨
 ٥٠٩
 ٥١٠
 ٥١١
 ٥١٢
 ٥١٣

Note : There are some feminine nouns which take the plural termination of the masculine nouns and some masculine nouns which take the plural termination of the feminines e. g.

سِنُونَ "years"	(singular: سَنَةً)
حَيَوَانٌ (singular: حَيَوَانٌ).	"animals"

Thirty-eighth Lesson

١. الْمَسَامُونَ لَا يَشْرَبُونَ خَيْرًا وَلَا يَأْكُلُونَ

٢. مَعَاوَا مَدْرَسَتِي وَمَسَاجِدَهَا زَارُوا
الْخَيْرِ لَمْ

قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ الْجَامِعِ الَّذِي فِي حَارَةِ الْحَمْدِ اَيْنَ وَ اَيْنَ
تَعْلَمُ اخُوكَ اللُّغَةَ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ؟ - اَخِي تَعْلَمُ اللُّغَةَ
الْعَرَبِيَّةَ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ الَّتِي فِي بَغْدَادِ يَا هَ اَتَعْلَمْتُ

فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ اللُّغَةِ الْإِنْكَلِيزِيَّةِ ؟ - نَعَمْ
عَلَيْهَا
الْجِبَابُ الْأَرْبَعُ ؟ - الْجِبَابُ
هَذَا ؟ مَا هِيَ

6. مَا تَعَلَّمْتَ الْيَوْمَ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ؟ - تَعَلَّمْتُ الْيَوْمَ
الْجِبَاهَاتِ الْأَرْبَعِ 7. مَعْلُومَكَ زَارُوا مَعْلُومِي أَخِي
8. أَيْنَ أَخُو الْجَارِ الصَّغِيرِ؟ - هُوَ
فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ

١٠. اَلْمُعَلِّمُونَ اَلْغَايَةَ وَ اَوَّلَايَاكَ اَلْمُعَلِّمُونَ
 ١١. اَخِيهِ تَعَلَّمَ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ
 ١٢. اَيْنَ كِتَابِكَ
 ١٣. اَلْمُعَلِّمُونَ
 ١٤. اَلْقُدْسُ فِي الْيَوْمِ كَانُوا اَلْمُعَلِّمَاتُ
 هَذِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةُ؟ - هُنَّ فِي كَرَمٍ جَدِّي.

Vocabulary: 267. مُسْلِمٌ Moslem 268. نَجْرٌ wine

269. خِنْزِيرٌ swine 270. جَامِعٌ mosque 271. حَاقِرَةٌ quarter (of a town) 272. تَعَلَّمَ "to learn" 273. لُغَةٌ language 274. عَرَبِيٌّ Arabic 275. سَاحِلٌ (عَرَبِيَّةٌ fem.) "Arabian" 276. اِنْكِيلِيزِيٌّ English (fem.) 277. جِهَةٌ direction 278. اَرْبَعٌ "four" 279. شَرْقٌ east 280. غَرْبٌ "west" 281. شِمَالٌ and شَمَالٌ "north"; 282. جَنُوبٌ south 283. اَمَامٌ "before"; 284. اِنْ فَرَنْتِ "in front of" 285. صَوْتٌ "voice" 286. هَالٌ "high"; 287. اَصْبَحْتُ (Imperfect: "voice") 288. اَلْقُدْسُ Jerusalem 289. هُوَ لَآءٌ "these" (masc. and fem.) 290. اَوَّلَاكُ or اَوَّلَايَكَ "those" (m. and f.).

Translate: 1. My son was to-day in the school which is in the Jaffa street 2. Our uncle (on the father's side) was to-day in Jerusalem and my teacher too was there 3. Where is now my small sister? — She plays in front of the mosque 4. This street is longer than that street 5. The bakers were to-day in the garden of the grand-father 6. Who saw the tailors to-day? — I saw the tailors in the afternoon 7. The teachers of this school were to-day in the vineyard of my brother 8. I learned the English language in this school 9. Where did thy (masc.) son learn the Arabic language? — He learned the Arabic language in Jaffa 10. The director and the teachers of this school (in Arabic: The director of this school and its teachers) have returned to-day from Jerusalem.

Thirty-ninth Lesson

الْجِهَاتُ الْارْبَعُ

لَمَّا رَجَعَ أَحْمَدُ مِنَ الْمَدْرَسَةِ سَأَلَهُ أُمُّهُ: مَا تَعَلَّمْتَ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ. فَقَالَ أَحْمَدُ تَعَلَّمْتُ الْجِهَاتِ الْارْبَعِ. وَهِيَ الشَّرْقُ وَالْغَرْبُ وَالشِّمَالُ وَالْجَنُوبُ. وَقَدْ قَالَ لَنَا الْمُعَلِّمُ إِنَّ الْجِبَةَ الَّتِي تُشْرِقُ مِنْهَا الشَّمْسُ هِيَ الشَّرْقُ وَالْجِبَةُ الَّتِي تَغِيبُ فِيهَا الشَّمْسُ هِيَ الْغَرْبُ وَالَّتِي تَكُونُ عَلَى يَمِينِنَا إِذَا قَابَلْنَا جِهَةَ الشَّرْقِ هِيَ الْجَنُوبُ وَالَّتِي تَكُونُ عَلَى يَسَارِنَا هِيَ الشِّمَالُ.

فَوَقَفْتُهُ أُمُّهُ يَوْجِبُهُ إِلَى جِهَةِ الْغَرْبِ وَقَالَتْ لَهُ: سَمِّرْ لِي الْآنَ الْجِهَاتِ وَأَشِرْ عَلَيْهَا. فَقَالَ أَحْمَدُ: الْغَرْبُ أَمَامِي وَالشَّرْقُ خَلْفِي وَالشِّمَالُ عَلَى يَمِينِي وَالْجَنُوبُ عَلَى يَسَارِي.

سَأَلَتْهُ: لَمَّا رَجَعَ أَحْمَدُ مِنَ الْمَدْرَسَةِ مَا سَأَلَتْهُ

أَبْنَاهُ مَا أَجَابَ أَحْمَدُ مَا قَالَ الْمَعْلَمُ كَيْفَ
وَقَفَّيْهِ أَمَهُ وَمَا قَالَتْ لَهُ مَا قَالَ أَحْمَدُ

Vocabulary: 290. لَمَّا "when" 291. إِنَّ "indeed", "verily";

"truly" (The sentence in Arabic is often introduced by the particle إِنَّ

which is followed by the subject in the accusative case e. g. إِنَّ الْبَيْتَ

كَبِيرٌ "truly" the house is big") 292. إِنَّ "that" (only after

the verb قَالَ "to say" For example: قَالَ إِنَّ الْبَيْتَ كَبِيرٌ

"he said that the house is big") 293. أَشْرَقَ "to shine"; "to rise"

(Imperfect: أَشْرَقَ "sun" 295. قَابَ "to be absent";

"to depart". 296. فِي "in" (in her) 297. يَمِينٌ "right

side" 298. يَسَارٌ "left side" 299. قَابِلٌ "to be in front of"; "to be

opposite to" 300. وَقَفَ "to place"; "to cause to stand" 301. وَجْهٌ

أَشَارَ 302. سَمِيَ "to name" (Imperative: سَمِّ "face"

خَلْفَ 303. خَلْفَ 304. (أَشِيرَ) "back" 305. خَلْفَ 306. خَلْفَ

"behind" (prep.) - خَلْفَكَ خَلْفِي - behind me behind me

Fourthieth Lesson

الصدى

كَانَ زَيْدٌ يَوْمًا فِي الْغَابَةِ الْقَرِيبَةِ مِنَ الْمَدِينَةِ.
وَبَيْنَمَا كَانَ يَلْتَمِسُ هُنَاكَ صَاحَ بِصَوْتٍ عَالٍ: هَاهَا هَا.
فَسَمِعَ فِي الْحَالِ صَوْتًا آخَرَ فِي الْغَابَةِ يَقُولُ:
هَاهَا هَا. فَظَنَّ زَيْدٌ أَنَّ فِي الْغَابَةِ وَلَدًا آخَرَ. لِأَنَّهُ
كَانَ لَا يَعْرِفُ مَا هُوَ الصَّدى. فَقَالَ: مَنْ أَنْتَ يَا
هَذَا، فَسَمِعَ حَالًا الصَّوْتِ الْآخَرَ يَقُولُ: مَنْ أَنْتَ
يَا هَذَا، فَظَنَّ زَيْدٌ أَنَّ الْوَلَدَ الْآخَرَ يَهْزَأُ بِهِ فَقَالَ:
أَنْتَ جَاهِلٌ أَهْمَقُ.

فَقَالَ الصَّوْتُ الْآخَرُ: أَنْتَ جَاهِلٌ أَهْمَقُ.
فَغَضِبَ زَيْدٌ وَرَفَعَ صَوْتَهُ وَصَاحَ بِصَوْتٍ
عَالٍ: أَنْتَ جَاهِلٌ أَهْمَقُ.

وَبَيْنَمَا هُوَ يَصِيحُ فَإِذَا بِأَبِيهِ قَدْ جَاءَ وَقَالَ لَهُ:
إِنَّكَ يَا أَبْنِي لَا تَسْمَعُ إِلَّا صَدَى صَوْتِكَ. فَلَمَّا
بَيَّنَّ لِزَيْدٍ أَمْرَ الصَّدى خَجَلَ وَرَجَعَ إِلَى الْبَيْتِ.

أَسْأَلُهُ : أَيْنَ كَانَ زَيْدٌ؟ مَا فَعَلَ هُنَاكَ؟ لَمَّا
صَاحَ هَاهَا هَاهَا مَا سَمِعَ؟ مَا ظَنُّ زَيْدٍ؟ مَا قَالَ
زَيْدٌ؟ مَا سَمِعَ بَعْدَهُ؟ لَمَّا ظَنُّ أَنْ الْوَلَدَ يَهْزَأُ بِهِ
مَا قَالَ؟ مَا سَمِعَ بَعْدَهُ؟ مَا فَعَلَ بَعْدَ ذَلِكَ؟ مَنْ
جَاءَ وَتَمَتَّأَ كَانَ يَصِيحُ؟ مَا قَالَ لَهُ أَبُوهُ؟ لَمَّا تَبَيَّنَ
لَزَيْدٍ أَمْرُ الصَّدَى مَا قَالَ؟

Vocabulary: 306. الصَّدَى "the echo" 307. يَوْمٌ "day" 308. مَدِينَةٌ "city"; "town" 309. حَالًا and also: 310. فِيمَا لَحَالًا "immediately" 311. هَذَا "to mock at"; "to deride" 312. أَثْوَقُ "stupid"; "foolish" 313. غَضِبَ "to be angry"; "to become angry" 314. جَاءَ "to come" 315. إِلَّا "except"; "only" 316. أَمْرٌ "matter"; "to become clear"; "to be elucidated" 317. بَعْدَهُ "after him"; "after it".

Note: لِأَنَّ "because" - لِأَنِّي "because I" - لِأَنَّكَ "because you" - لِأَنَّكَ "because you" etc.

لِأَنَّكَ "because you" - لِأَنَّكَ "because you" etc.

Fourty-first Lesson

A

"dogs"	كِلَابٌ	"a dog"	كَلْبٌ
"houses"	بُيُوتٌ	"a house"	بَيْتٌ
"books"	كُتُبٌ	"a book"	كِتَابٌ
"men"	رِجَالٌ	"a man"	رَجُلٌ
"schools"	مَدَارِسٌ	"a school"	مَدْرَسَةٌ

In Arabic there are two kinds of plurals which are generally known as the **sound** (or: the **strong**) and the **broken** (or: the **weak**) plurals.

Sound plural is the plural which is formed by adding the termination **ونَ** to masculine nouns (see above page 90) and the

termination **اتِ** to the feminine nouns (see above page 91, B).

Broken plural is the plural which is formed as follows:

1. By internal change such as كَلْبٌ "dog", plural: كِلَابٌ;

بَيْتٌ "house", plural: بُيُوتٌ etc.

2. By internal change and by the addition of a termination,

such as قَارِئٌ "reader", plural: قَارِئُونَ; وَزِيرٌ "minister",

plural: وَزَرَاءُ etc.

3. By internal change and by the addition of a prefix, such as وَلَدٌ "child", plural: أَوْلَادٌ; سَبَبٌ "cause", plur. أَسْبَابٌ etc.

4. By internal change and by the addition of a termination as أَسْأَلُ "question", plural: أسْأَلُونَ well as of a prefix, such as سَأَلَ "question", plural: سَأَلُوا.

Note 1: Some nouns have two or more different forms of **broken plural**, such as بَحْرٌ "sea", plural: بَحَارٌ, بَحْرُونَ, أَبْحَارٌ and أَبْحَارٌ.

Some nouns have both the **sound** and the **broken-**

plurals, such as ابْنٌ "son", plural: أَبْنَاءٌ and بَنُونَ.

Note 2: The forms of the **broken plural** are fairly numerous and usually cause the students some difficulty, though by no means as serious as it might appear at first sight.

The best way is to learn the plural of each noun together with its singular.

B

"big houses"	بُيُوتٌ كَبِيرَةٌ (1)	بَيْتٌ كَبِيرٌ	"a big house"
"big schools"	مَدَارِسٌ كَبِيرَةٌ	مَدْرَسَةٌ	"a school"
"big animals"	حَيَوَانَاتٌ كَبِيرَةٌ (2)		
"these houses"	هَذِهِ الْبُيُوتُ	هَذِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةُ	
"these schools"	هَذِهِ الْمَدَارِسُ	هَذِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةُ	"this school"
"these animals"	هَذِهِ الْحَيَوَانَاتُ		
	أَيْنَ الْكُتُبِ الْجَدِيدَةِ؟ — هِيَ عَلَى مَائِدَتِي		
	"Where are the new books? — they are on my table"		

- (a) The **broken-plurals** are treated as feminine singulars thus:

هَذِهِ الْبُيُوتُ كَبِيرَةٌ "these houses are big"

هَذِهِ الْكُتُبُ رَخِيصَةٌ. اشْتَرَيْتُهَا فِي الدُّكَّانِ "these books are cheap. I bought them in the shop"

Exceptions are the nouns which denote persons e. g.

هَذِهِ الرِّجَالُ "these men" and not: هَؤُلَاءِ الرِّجَالُ

هَؤُلَاءِ الرِّجَالُ "the diligent pupils"

- (2) When the noun which does not denote persons is in the **sound-plural** it is also treated as a feminine singular e. g.

هَذِهِ الْحَيَوَانَاتُ كَبِيرَةٌ "these animals are big"

Forty-second Lesson

1. أَيْنَ الْجُرَائِدِ الَّتِي اشْتَرَيْتَهَا قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ؟ —

هِيَ عَلَى مَائِدَتِي 2. أَيْنَ اشْتَرَيْتَ هَذِهِ الدَّقَائِرَ

الْجَدِيدَةَ؟ — اشْتَرَيْتَهَا فِي الدُّكَّانِ الْجَدِيدِ 3. خُذْ

هَذَا الطَّبَاثِيرَ وَارْسُمِ رَجُلًا عَلَى اللُّوْحِ 4. اللُّوْحُ

أَسْوَدٌ وَالطَّبَاثِيرُ أَبْيَضٌ 5. سَفِينَةٌ وَاحِدَةٌ مِنْ

السُّمَنِ الَّتِي رَأَيْتَهَا فِي الصَّبَاحِ قَدْ غَرَقَتْ بَعْدَ

الظُّهْرِ 6. الدُّبُّ أَكْبَرُ مِنَ الذِّئْبِ وَالْفِيلُ أَكْبَرُ

مِنَ الدُّبِّ 7. رَأَيْتُ الْيَوْمَ تَلَامِيذَ هَذِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ
فِي الْغَابَةِ الْقَرِيبَةِ مِنْ يَاقَا 8. مَتَى اسْتَرَيْتَ هَذِهِ
الْكُتُبَ؟ - اسْتَرَيْتُهَا فِي السَّنَةِ الْمَاضِيَةِ 9. يَكُمُ
بَاعَ الْفَلَاحُ الثَّعْلَبَ وَبِكُمُ اسْتَرَى الْجَمَارَ؟ - الْفَلَاحُ
بَاعَ الثَّعْلَبَ بَابِرَةَ فَلَسْطِيشِيَّةً وَاسْتَرَى الْجَمَارَ بِلِيَوَتَيْنِ
فَلَسْطِيشِيَّتَيْنِ 10. هَذَا التَّاجِرُ وَشَرِيكُهُ فَتَحَا دُكَّانًا
جَدِيدًا فِي السُّوقِ الْجَدِيدِ 11. شُرَكَاءُ هَذِهِ الشَّرَكَةِ
اِغْنَى مِنْ شُرَكَاءِ تِلْكَ الشَّرَكَةِ 12. هَذِهِ الْأَرَانِبُ
أكْبَرُ مِنْ تِلْكَ الْأَرَانِبِ 13. الْبُيُوتُ فِي هَذَا
السَّارِعِ أَكْبَرُ مِنَ الْبُيُوتِ الَّتِي فِي ذَلِكَ السَّارِعِ
14. رَأَيْتُ الْيَوْمَ تَلَامِيذَ هَذِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ فِي الْغَابَةِ
الْكَبِيرَةِ الْقَرِيبَةِ مِنْ حَيْفَا.

طَبَاشِيرُ 321. اخذَ imperative of خذ 320.

"chalk" 322. رَجُلٌ "man" (plur. رِجَالٌ) 323. سَفِينَةٌ "ship" (plur.

أَغْرَقُ (imperf. "to drown" "to sink"; غَرَقَ 324. (سُفُنٌ

325. (دُبَابٌ (plur. "wolf" 326. (دُبَابٌ (plur. "bear" 325.
الْمَاضِي 328. (سَنَوَاتٌ and also سِنُونَ (plur. "year" 327.
"how many?"; "how much?" 329. (الْمَاضِيَةُ (fem. "past" 328.
330. (فَلاَحٌ 331. (ابِيعُ (imperf. "to sell" 330. باعَ
332. (تَاجِرٌ 333. (لِبْرَةٌ فَلَسْطِيشِيَّةٌ 332.
"merchant" (plur. شُرَكَاءُ 334. (جَمَارٌ (plur. شَرِيكٌ
335. and also: شَرَكَةٌ "company"; "partnership".

Fourth-third Lesson

1. زَرَعَ الْفَلَاحُ الْيَوْمَ لِفَتَا فِي الْبُسْتَانِ 2. صَاحِبُ
الْبَيْتِ كَانَ الْيَوْمَ فِي الْقَرْيَةِ وَاسْتَرَى هُنَاكَ مِنَ
الْفَلَاحِينَ ثَبَا بَابِرَةَ فَلَسْطِيشِيَّةً 3. هُوَ لِأَنَّ التَّلَامِيذَ
مُجْتَمِعُونَ وَأَوَّلًا تِلْكَ التَّلَامِيذُ كَسَلَانُونَ 4. هَذِهِ
الْمَدَارِسُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ تِلْكَ الْمَدَارِسِ 5. أَيْنَ تَرَكْتَ
كِلَابَ جَدِّي؟ - تَرَكْتُهَا فِي الْكَرْنَمِ 6. هَذِهِ
الْبُيُوتُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ بُيُوتِ ذَلِكَ السَّارِعِ 7. مَتَى
اسْتَرَيْتَ هَذِهِ الدُّيُولَ؟ - اسْتَرَيْتُهَا الْبَارِحَ 8. مَا

- رَسَمَ إِنْهُمُ فِي الدَّقْرِ الْجَدِيدِ ١- هُوَ رَسَمَ هَذَا
خَطوطًا مُسْتَقِيمَةً ١٥. هَذَا الْخَطُّ اطْوَلُ مِنْ كُلِّ
الْخَطوطِ الْآخَرَى ١٥. بَنُوا الْجَارَ كَسَلَانُونَ وَبَنَاهُ
مَجْتَهِدَاتٌ ١١. بَنَاتُ أَخِي دَرَسْنَ فِي هَذِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ
وَبَنُوهُ دَرَسُوا فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ الَّتِي فِي الْمَدِينَةِ الْقَدِيمَةِ
١٢. الْفُلَاخُونَ الَّذِينَ خَرَجُوا مِنَ الْجَامِعِ ذَهَبُوا
إِلَى يَاقَا ١٣. مِنْ أَيْنَ رَجَعَ الْأَلَامِيذُ الَّذِينَ دَخَلُوا
الْمَدْرَسَةَ الْآنَ؟ - هُمْ رَجَعُوا مِنَ الْغَابَةِ ١٤. مَا
أَعْطَى مُدِيرُ الْمَدْرَسَةِ الْأَلَامِيذَ؟ - هُوَ أَعْطَاهُمْ كُتُبًا
جَدِيدَةً ١٥. هَذِهِ الدَّقَاتِرُ غَالِيَةٌ. هِيَ أَغْلَى مِنْ
تِلْكَ الدَّقَاتِرِ ١٦. السُّكَّرُ الَّذِي اشْتَرَيْتُ فِي هَذَا
الْبُكَانِ كَانَ أَغْلَى مِنَ السُّكَّرِ الَّذِي اشْتَرَيْتُهُ فِي السُّوقِ.
- Vocabulary:** 336. زَرَعَ "to sow" (imperfect: يَزْرَعُ)
337. "turnip", 338. صَاحِبٌ "friend", "owner", "possessor"
339. قَرْيَةٌ "village" (فُرَى) (أَصْحَابٌ plural: الْفُرَى)

- كَسَلَانٌ 340. تَبْنُ "straw" 341. دَقْرٌ diligent 342. كَسَلَانٌ
"line" 343. الْبَارِحَ and also, yesterday 344. خَطٌّ
345. مُسْتَقِيمٌ "straight" 346. كُلُّ followed by a
definite noun in plural is to be translated "all" e.g. الْخَطوطُ
"all the lines", "all his houses" (see above p. 85 vocabulary)
347. ابْنَةٌ "son" 348. أَبْنَاءُ (and also) بَنُونَ, 349. بَنَاتُ
"daughter", "girl" (plur) 350. يَدْرُسُ (imperf. "to study", "to learn")
351. الَّذِينَ "who" (relative pronoun, plur. masc.) 352. أَعْطَى "to give"
353. قَالَ "dear (price)", "precious" (الغَالِي) "he gave him"
354. أَعْطَاهُ "he gave to the pupil", 355. أَغْلَى مِنْ غَالِيَةً
"the dear", fem. "more precious than").

Translate: 1. These farmers are richer than those farmers

2. Where did you (masc) buy these new books? - I bought them
in the new shop 3. These pupils are lazy and those pupils
are diligent 4. The possessor of these houses is rich. He is
richer than the possessor of those houses 5. Where are the
dogs of the grand-father? - they are (in Arabic: she is) in the
garden of the neighbour 6. The pupils of this school have been
to-day in the forest and the pupils of that school were there
yesterday 7. The new house is bigger than the old house
8. My brother sold his old house and bought a new house

9. I saw yesterday a big bear in a cage 10. The schools in this village are small. They are (in Arabic: she is) smaller than the schools in that village 11. These copy-books are cheaper than those copy-books 12. These new houses are smaller than those old houses 13. These bakers are rich. They are richer than those bakers.

Forty-fourth Lesson

أمثال

1. رَأْسُ الْحِكْمَةِ خِيفَةُ اللَّهِ
2. رَأْسُ الْكَفَّارَانِ مَعْلُ السَّيْطَانِ
3. مِنْ كَثْرَةِ الْمَلَايِينِ عَرَفْتُ السَّيْفِيَّةَ
4. الْإِسْمَاعِيلِيُّ وَالْأَعْمَارُ بِيَدِ اللَّهِ
5. رَاحَةُ الْجِسْمِ فِي قِلَّةِ الطَّامَامِ
6. وَرَاحَةُ الْإِنْسَانِ فِي قِلَّةِ الْكَلَامِ
- هَذَا الْحِمَارُ بِلَهْرَةٍ وَسَرَجُهُ بِلَهْرَيْنِ

القطار الذي سافر

قَالَ الْمَعْلَمُ لِأَحَدِ التِّلْمِيزِ ارْسُمْ عَلَى الْوُجْهِ
فِي طَارًا. فَتَقَرَّبَ التِّلْمِيزُ مِنَ الْوُجْهِ وَأَخَذَ الطَّبَاشِيرَ

بِيَدِهِ وَرَسَمَ عَلَى الْوُجْهِ حُطَيْنِ مُسْتَقِيمَيْنِ وَمَا
رَسَمَ الْقِطَارَ.

الْمَعْلَمُ: وَأَيْنَ الْقِطَارُ؟

التِّلْمِيزُ: قَدْ سَافَرَ بَا مَعْلَمِي.

أَسْأَلُهُ: مَا قَالَ الْمَعْلَمُ لِتِلْمِيزِهِ؟ مَا رَسَمَ التِّلْمِيزُ؟
مَا سَأَلَ الْمَعْلَمُ؟ مَا أَجَابَ التِّلْمِيزُ؟

سَافَرَ: 354. قِطَارٌ "train"; "railway train" 355.

- "to travel"; "to make a journey" 356. رَأْسٌ "head"; "beginning"
(plural: رُؤُوسٌ) 357. حِكْمَةٌ "wisdom" 358. خِيفَةٌ "fear";
359. كَثْرَةٌ "abundance"; "multiplicity" 360. "Allah" 361. عَمْرٌ
362. رَاحَةٌ (plural, أَعْمَارٌ) 363. رَاحَةٌ "rest"; "comfort";
"age"; "life-time" (plural, أَعْمَارٌ) 364. جِسْمٌ "body"; "ease"
365. قِلَّةٌ "littleness"; "smallness";
366. طَامَمٌ "food"; "nourishment" 367. كَلَامٌ "speech"; "talk"
368. سَرَجٌ "saddle" (plur. سُرُجٌ).

١٤٣٥

السرور

"Ahmad is poor" أَهْمَدٌ فَقِيرٌ
 "the house of Ahmad" الْبَيْتُ أَهْمَدُ (1)
 "I saw Ahmad" رَأَيْتُ أَهْمَدَ
 "in the schools" فِي الْمَدَارِسِ (2)

"Salim is poor" سَلِيمٌ فَقِيرٌ
 "the house of Salim" الْبَيْتُ سَلِيمٌ
 "I saw Salim" رَأَيْتُ سَلِيمًا
 "in the books" فِي الْكُتُبِ

(1) There are nouns and adjectives with no **Tanwin** at the end

مَدَارِسُ اسودَ "black"; كَسَلَانُ "Ahmad"; أَحْمَدُ "Ahmad"; دَفَاتِرُ "copy-books" etc.

These **Tanwin-less** nouns and adjectives have two case-endings only:

a. (u) in the Nominative e.g. **الْبُسْتَانُ** Ahmad
is in the garden.

b. (a) in both the Genitive and the Accusative e.g. **بَيْتُ**
is in the garden.

فِي مَدَارِسَ جَدِيدَةٍ "the house of Ahmad"; **أَحْمَدُ**
"in new schools"; **فِي بَيْتِ أَيْضَ**

رَأَيْتُ مَدَارِسَ جَدِيدَةٍ "saw Ahmad"; **رَأَيْتُ أَحْمَدَ**
I saw new houses

رَأَيْتُ بَيْتًا أَيْضَ saw a white house

(2) When the **Tanwin-less** nouns and adjectives are made

definite by the Article **الْ** or by a possessive suffix or by

a following Genitive, then they have three case-endings e.g.

a. **هَذِهِ الْمَدَارِسُ جَدِيدَةٌ** "these schools are new".

b. **مُعَلِّمُوا الْمَدَارِسَ** "the teachers of the schools"

فِي مَدَارِسِ الْمَدِينَةِ "in the schools of the city"

فِي دَفَاتِرِهَا "in her copy-books"

c. **رَأَيْتُ الْمَدَارِسَ** "I saw the schools".

1. **مَا عَلَى الْمَاءِ كَيْفَ دَفَاتِرُ**

وَجَرَائِدُ 2. **نَحْنُ شَرَبْنَا قَهْوَةً فِي فَتَاحِينَ كَبِيرَةٍ**

وَمَا شَرَبُوا قَهْوَةً فِي فَتَاحِينَ صَغِيرَةٍ 3. مَا

أَشْتَرَيْتَ فِي الدُّكَانِ الْجَدِيدِ 2- إَشْتَرَيْتَ هُنَاكَ

جَرَائِدَ وَدَفَاتِرَ وَكُتُبًا 4. قَدْ دَخَلَ سَارِقٌ مَرْفَافَةَ

أَخِي الْكَبِيرِ وَسَرَقَ السَّاعَةَ الَّتِي اشْتَرَاهَا أَخِي

الْبَارِحَ 5. كَتَبْتُ الْيَوْمَ بِحُرِّ أَرْقَ وَأَخَذِي

كَتَبْتُ بِحُرِّ أَحْمَرَ 6. كَانَ أَخِي فِي مَحْكَمَةِ

الصُّلَحِ وَرَأَى هُنَاكَ اللِّحَايَ الَّذِي كَانَ الْبَارِحَ

فِي كَرَمٍ جَدِيدٍ 7. مَنْ رَأَى بَيْتِي الْجَدِيدَ 2- أَيْ

رَأَيْتَهُ الْبَارِحَ 8. قَالَ أَبُوكَ إِنَّهُ يَنْتَظِرُكَ فِي

مَحْكَمَةِ الصُّلَحِ 9. انْتَظَرَكَ الْخَطِيطُ قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ

فِي دُكَّانِهِ الَّذِي فِي حَارَةِ الْمُسْلِمِينَ 10. أَيْنَ الْجَبْنَةُ

الَّتِي اشْتَرَيْتَهَا فِي السُّوقِ 2- هِيَ فِي الْمَطْبَخِ

11. اشْتَرَيْتَ الْيَوْمَ فِي السُّوقِ ثَقَاكًا وَعَبَا وَجُوزًا

12. هَذِهِ الثَّقَاكَةُ حَامِيَةٌ وَتِلْكَ الثَّقَاكَةُ حُلُومَةٌ

13. هَذِهِ الْجُوزَةُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ تِلْكَ الْجُوزَةِ

Vocabulary: 390. سَارِقٌ "thief" 391. سَرَقَ "to steal"

(Imperat.): (يَسْرِقُ) 392. سَاعَةٌ "hour" and also: "watch";

"clock" 393. مَحْكَمَةٌ "court of justice" (pluri: مَحَاكِمُ)

394. صَلَاحٌ "peace", "reconciliation" 395. مُحَامٍ "advocate",

"barrister" رَأَتْ "she saw" (إِلْحَايِي) "the advocate" 396.

رَأَتْ "she saw" (إِلْحَايِي) "the advocate" 396. رَأَتْ "she saw"

(Imperat.): (يَسْتَعِظُ) 397. أَسْتَظِرُّ "to expect", "to wait for"

398. جُبْنَةٌ "a piece of cheese" (see below Note)

399. مَطْبَخٌ "kitchen" 400. تَفَاحٌ "apples" 401. عَنَبٌ "grapes"

402. حَامِضٌ "sour" 403. حَلْوٌ "sweet".

Note: Many nouns which denote plants or materials

have two singular forms:

1. A form without ة in the end. This form denotes the plant

or the material generally. For example:

الْتَفَاحُ فَاكِهَةٌ "the apple is a fruit",

جُبْنٌ يَصْنَعُ مِنْ حَلِيبٍ "cheese is produced from milk".

The nouns in this singular form are to be translated

sometimes as if they were plurals e. g.

اِشْتَرَيْتُ فِي السُّوقِ تَفَاحًا وَعِنَبًا وَجُوزًا

in the market apples, grapes and nuts.

2. A form with ة in the end. This form indicates a single object

of the named plant or a piece of the named material e. g.

لِي تَفَاحَةٌ وَهِيَ تَفَاحَةٌ "I have an apple and he has

an apple", هَذِهِ الْجُبْنَةُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ تِلْكَ الْجُبْنَةِ

"this piece of cheese is bigger than that piece of cheese".

"Two apples", "Two pieces of cheese" is to be translated:

تَفَاحَتَانِ ، جُبْنَتَانِ

Translate: 1. This clock is bigger than the clock which

thy (masc.) brother bought in Jerusalem 2. Where is the (piece

of) cheese which I put on the table? — It is on the table in the

kitchen 3. This apple is sour. It is sourer than that apple

4. Who has seen to-day the director of this school? — I have

seen him to-day 5. This new house is smaller than the

old house of the uncle (on the father's side) 6. What did thy

(nec.) brother buy in the new shop? — He bought there books

and copy-books 7. The houses in this village are bigger

than the houses of that village 8. I have a white dog and a

black dog. The white dog is fatter than the black dog. 9. Who

has seen Ahmad to-day? — My mother has seen him in the

Forty-seventh Lesson

الْبَغَاةُ

كَانَ لِرَجُلٍ بَيْتَاءٌ جَمِيلَةٌ تَعْرِفُ الْكَلَامَ وَإِذَا

مَرَّ بِهَا رَجُلٌ قَالَتْ لَهُ «نَهَارَكَ سَمِيدٌ يَا أَخِي» وَكَانَتْ

تُخْرِجُهُ إِلَى الْبُسْتَانِ بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ وَتَسْتَظِرُّ صَاحِبَهَا إِلَى

أَنَّ رَجَعَ مِنْ دُكَّانِهِ. وَلَمَّا رَأَتْهُ كَانَتْ تَقُولُ: يَا

عَمِّي خُذْنِي إِلَى الْبَيْتِ . فَصَاعَتْ الْبَيْعَاءُ يَوْمًا .
فَكَانَ صَاحِبُهَا يَسْأَلُ كُلَّ النَّاسِ عَنْهَا فَقَالَ لَهُ أَحَدُ
الرِّجَالِ : إِنِّي سَمِعْتُ صَوْتَ بَيْعَاءٍ فِي بَيْتٍ جَارِي .
فَذَهَبَ صَاحِبُ الْبَيْعَاءِ إِلَى جَارِ ذَلِكَ الرَّجُلِ
وَسَأَلَهُ عَنِ الْبَيْعَاءِ . فَلَمَّا سَمِعَتْ صَوْتَ صَاحِبِهَا
قَالَتْ : « يَا عَمِّي خُذْنِي إِلَى الْبَيْتِ » . فَدَخَلَ الرَّجُلُ
وَأَخَذَهَا مِنْ بَيْتِ السَّارِقِ .

أَسْئَلُهُ : مَا كَانَتْ الْبَيْعَاءُ تَقُولُ لِكُلِّ وَاحِدٍ إِذَا
كَانَ يَوْمٌ بِهَا ، لِأَنَّا كَانَتْ تَخْرُجُ إِلَى الْبُسْتَانِ ، لَمَّا
رَأَتْ صَاحِبَهَا يَرْجِعُ مِنْ دُكَّانِهِ مَا قَالَتْ لَهُ : لَمَّا
صَاعَتْ الْبَيْعَاءُ مَا فَعَلَ صَاحِبُهَا ، مَا قَالَ لَهُ أَحَدُ الرِّجَالِ ؟

مر 405. بَيْعَاءٌ "parrot", "popinjay".

مر 406. بَلَّكَ مَرَّ فِي "he passed the house".

مر 407. سَعِيدٌ "fortunate", "lucky".

مر 408. إِنْسَانٌ "man", "person".

مر 409. نَاسٌ "people", "men".

Forty-eighth Lesson

A

"thy (masc.) house"	(1) بَيْتُكَ	بَيْتٌ
"thy (masc.) school"	(2) مَدْرَسَتُكَ	مَدْرَسَةٌ
"thy (masc.) two houses"	(3) بَيْتَاكَ	بَيْتَانِ
"in thy (masc.) two houses"	فِي بَيْتَيْكَ	فِي بَيْتَيْنِ
"thy (masc.) teachers"	مُعَلِّمُوكَ	مُعَلِّمُونَ
"with thy (masc.) teachers"	مَعَ مُعَلِّمِكَ	مَعَ مُعَلِّمَيْنِ
"his (female) teachers"	مُعَلِّمَاتُهَا	مُعَلِّمَاتٌ
"thy (masc.) houses"	بُيُوتُكَ	بُيُوتٌ
"thy (masc.) big house"	بَيْتُكَ الْكَبِيرُ (1)	بَيْتٌ كَبِيرٌ

(1) A personal suffix added to a noun denotes the property of the noun to the person which the pronominal suffix referred to. e.g. بَيْتُهُ "his house"; بَيْتُهَا "her house". These personal suffixes are therefore called **Possessive Pronouns**.

A possessive pronoun added to a noun defines it completely just as the article ال would do, for "his house" specifies a definite (particular) house. The nouns drop therefore the **Tanwin** (see above Lesson 23(3)) before the possessive pronouns e.g.

بَيْتُهُ "his house" (بَيْتٌ "a house")

(2) Feminine nouns ending in ة change this termination into ت

before the possessive pronouns e.g. **مَدْرَسَتَكَ** "thy (masc.) school."

school. (مَدْرَسَةٌ "a school")

(3) Nouns to which the possessive pronouns are attached take the forms which they have before a genitive e.g.

بَيْتَانِ **أَلْحَبَّارِ** "thy (masc.) two houses" (and also: **بَيْتَاكَ**

two houses of the baker". See above Lesson 32 C. (1))

فِي بَيْتَيْهِ "in thy (masc.) two houses" (so also: **فِي بَيْتَيْكَ**

سَلِيمٍ "in the two houses of Salīm". See above)

رَأَيْتُ مَعَالِمَكَ "I saw thy (masc.) two houses" (so also:

رَأَيْتُ بَيْتَيْ سَلِيمٍ "I saw the two houses of Salīm")

مُعَلِّمُوا سَلِيمٍ "thy (masc.) teachers" (so also:

"the teachers of Salīm". See above Lesson 37 A. (3))

رَأَيْتُ مُعَلِّمَيْكَ "I saw thy (masc.) teachers" (so also: **رَأَيْتُ مُعَلِّمَيْ سَلِيمٍ**

"I saw the teachers of Salīm". See above)

بَيْتُ سَلِيمٍ "thy (masc.) house" (so also: **بَيْتُكَ**

of Salīm". See above Lesson 25 (1) b. Note)

فِي بَيْتِ سَلِيمٍ "in thy (masc.) house" (so also: **فِي بَيْتِكَ**

"in the house of Salīm".)

(4) When an adjective is added to a noun which has a possessive pronoun it is necessary to make the adjective definite e.g.

بَيْتُكَ الْكَبِيرُ "thy (masc.) big house",

بَيْتَاكَ الْكَبِيرَانِ "thy (masc.) two big houses"

B

The nouns added by the possessive pronouns are as follows :

The number of the possessor	The possessor	in a house	two houses	teachers	في بَيْتَيْنِ in two houses
Singular	1 m.f.	بَيْتِي	بَيْتَايَ (1)	مُعَلِّمَوِي	فِي بَيْتِي
	2 m.	بَيْتُكَ	بَيْتَاكَ	مُعَلِّمُولَكَ	فِي بَيْتَيْكَ
	2 f.	بَيْتُكَ	بَيْتَاكِ	مُعَلِّمُولَكِ	فِي بَيْتَيْكِ
	3 m.	بَيْتُهُ (2)	بَيْتَاهُ	مُعَلِّمُولَهُ	فِي بَيْتَيْهِ
	3 f.	بَيْتُهَا	بَيْتَاهَا	مُعَلِّمُولَهَا	فِي بَيْتَيْهَا
Dual	1 m.f.	بَيْتُكُمَا	بَيْتَاكُمَا	مُعَلِّمُولُكُمَا	فِي بَيْتَيْكُمَا
	2 m.f.	بَيْتُكُمَا	بَيْتَاكُمَا	مُعَلِّمُولُكُمَا	فِي بَيْتَيْكُمَا
	3 m.f.	بَيْتُهُمَا	بَيْتَاهُمَا	مُعَلِّمُولَهُمَا	فِي بَيْتَيْهِمَا
Plural	1 m.f.	بَيْتَانَا	بَيْتَانَا	مُعَلِّمُونَا	فِي بَيْتَيْنَا
	2 m.	بَيْتُكُمَا	بَيْتَاكُمَا	مُعَلِّمُولُكُمَا	فِي بَيْتَيْكُمَا
	2 f.	بَيْتُكُمَا	بَيْتَاكُمَا	مُعَلِّمُولُكُمَا	فِي بَيْتَيْكُمَا
	3 f.	بَيْتُهُنَّ	بَيْتَاهُنَّ	مُعَلِّمُولُهُنَّ	فِي بَيْتَيْهِنَّ

Note: For the first person there is no special Dual form.

(1) The pronominal suffix of the first person is **يَ** when it

follows a vowelless **و** For example:

مُعَلِّمُوِيَّيْ "my teachers"
بَيْتَاِيَّيْ "my two houses"

Note: فِي بَيْتَيْيْ "in my two houses" instead of فِي بَيْتِيَّيْ
رَأَى مُعَلِّمِيَّيْ "he saw my teachers" instead of رَأَى مُعَلِّمِيَّيْ

(2) The suffixes هُ هُم هِيَ هُنَّ are changed into هَا هَهُمَا هِيَ هُنَّ

هِيَ هُنَّ when they follow the vowel **يَ** (i), the **يَ** (ay) or the **يَ** (ay) e.g. فِي بَيْتَيْهِ "in his house"; فِي بَيْتِهِمْ "in their (masc.) house"; فِي بَيْتَيْهِمَا "in his two houses";

رَأَيْتُ مُعَلِّمَيْهِ "I saw his teachers" etc.

Note: The prepositions also take the pronominal suffixes as follows:

لَهَا لَهِ لَكَ لَكِ لِي لِيَّ لِيَّ لِيَّ "to", "for" or "I have" etc.

بِهَا بِهْ بِكَ بِكِ بِئِي بِئِيَّ بِئِيَّ "with"; "in" etc.

إِلَيْهَا إِلَيْهِ إِلَيْكَ إِلَيْكِ إِلَيْيَّ إِلَيْيَّ إِلَيْيَّ "to", "into" etc.

عَلَيْهَا عَلَيْهِ عَلَيْكَ عَلَيْكِ عَلَيَّ عَلَيَّ عَلَيَّ "on" etc.

قَبْلَهَا قَبْلَهُ قَبْلَكَ قَبْلَكَ قَبْلِي قَبْلِي قَبْلِي "before" etc.

مِنْهَا مِنْهُ مِنْكَ مِنْكِ مِنِّي مِنِّي مِنِّي "from", "of", "than" etc.

Forty-ninth Lesson

1. أَبُو أَبِي وَأَبُو أُمِّي هُمَا جَدَّاي. أُمُّ أَبِي وَأُمُّ أُمِّي

هُمَا جَدَّتَايَ وَأَنَا حَفِيدُهُمْ. 2. مَا فَرَسَ جَدُّكَ الْيَوْمَ

فِي بُسْتَانِكُمْ؟ 1- جَدِّي فَرَسَ الْيَوْمَ مَخْلًا فِي بُسْتَانِنَا

3. سَلِمَ وَالِدُهُ خَرَجًا مِنْ مَحْكَمَةِ الصُّلْحِ وَرَجَا

إِلَى بَيْتَيْهِ الَّذِي فِي الدِّيَارَةِ الْقَدِيمَةِ. 4. سَلِمَ وَالِدَتُهَا

كَانَّا الْيَوْمَ فِي الْجَامِعِ. 5. أَبِي وَأُمِّي هُمَا وَالِدَايَ

وَأَنَا أَبُيُّهُمَا. 6. وَالِدَتِي أَبْنَاؤُهَا وَبَنَاتُهَا غَيْرِي. فَسَابَقْنَا هُمَ

إِخْوَتِي وَبَنَاتُهُمْ أَخَوَاتِي. 7. كَانَ أَخِي فِي الْقُدْسِ مَرَّةً

وَفِي حَيْفًا مَرَّتَيْنِ. 8. أَخِي كَانَتْ الْيَوْمَ فِي حَدِيثَةِ

الْحَيَوَاتِ وَرَأَتْ هُنَاكَ نُسُورًا مُخْتَلِفَةً. 9. مَا هُوَ

الشَّيْءُ الَّذِي حَمَلَهُ الشَّيْخُ 2- النِّعَانَةُ 3- الشَّيْخُ حَلَّ

خِزْمَةً حَطَبٍ مِنْ هُنَاكَ. 4. أَيْنَ الْكُتُبِ الْجَدِيدَةِ

الَّتِي اشْتَرَيْتَهَا الْبَارِحَ؟ 5. أَخَذَهَا أَخِي الْكَبِيرُ

10. مُعَلِّمُوِيَّيْ وَمُعَلِّمُوكَ كَانُوا الْيَوْمَ فِي حَارَةِ الْمُسْلِمِينَ

11. بَنَاتُ جَارِنَا وَبَنُو كَانُوا الْيَوْمَ فِي النِّعَانَةِ الْفَرِيَّةِ

مِنْ قَوْمَيْنَا 12. أَيْنَ كَسَّابَاكَ الْجَدِيدَانِ وَأَيْنَ
دَفَّيْرَايَ؟ - كَسَّابَايَ الْجَدِيدَانِ فِي عُزْرِقَتِي
وَدَفَّيْرَايَ أَيْضًا هُنَاكَ.

Vocabulary: 411. حَفِيدٌ "grandson" (plural: أَحْفَادٌ)

وَالِدٌ 412. "to plant trees" 413. نَخْلٌ "date palms" 414.

أَخٌ 417. "the parents" 416. وَالِدَةٌ "mother" 415. وَالِدَةٌ "father"

مِرَارًا 418. أُخْتُ "sister" (plural: أَخَوَاتٌ) 419. مَرَّةً "once"

ثَلَاثُ مَرَّاتٍ "three times" 420. نَسْرٌ "eagle" (plural: نَسْرٌ)

ثَلَاثُ مَرَّاتٍ "three times" 421. شَيْءٌ "something"

أَشْيَاءٌ "various" 422. حَمَلٌ "to carry" (Imperf: يَحْمِلُ)

شَيْخٌ 423. "an old man" ; "chief" ; "sheikh" (plural: شُيُوخٌ)

حُزْمَةٌ 424. "package" ; "bundle" 425. حَطَبٌ "fire-wood".

Fiftieth Lesson

1. كَمْ مَرَّةً كَانَ أَخُوكَ الْكَبِيرُ الْيَوْمَ فِي يَافَا؟ -
أَخِي الْكَبِيرُ كَانَ الْيَوْمَ مَرَّتَيْنِ هُنَاكَ 2. هَذَا

الصَّيَادُ صَادَ الْيَوْمَ أَزْدَيْنِي فَذَبَحَ أَحَدَهُمَا وَبَاعَ لَحْمَهُ
فِي السُّوقِ 3. هَذَا الصَّيَادُ يَصِيدُ دَائِمًا فِي الثَّغَايَةِ
الْقَرِيبَةِ مِنْ قَوْمِكُمْ 4. لَمَّا ذَا يَبْكِي الرَّالِدُ وَالْأُمُوعُ
تَسِيلُ مِنْ عَيْنَيْهِ؟ - هُوَ يَبْكِي مِنْ شِدَّةِ الْبُرْدِ وَ قَدْ
جَاءَ إِلَى تَلْمِيذِكَ وَبَعْدَ مَا سَلَّمَ عَلَيْهِ قَالَ إِنَّكَ تَنْتَظِرُنِي
فِي بَيْتِكَ الْجَدِيدِ 6. مُعَلِّمٌ زَيْدٌ مِنْ بَنِي وَاسَلَّمَ عَلَيْهِ
7. عَمَّكَ وَآرَنِي الْبَارِحَ وَأَنَا أَزُورُهُ عَدَا إِنَّ شَاءَ اللَّهُ
8. مَتَى يَزُورُنِي خَالَكَ؟ - هُوَ يَزُورُنِي بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ
إِنَّ شَاءَ اللَّهُ 9. مُعَلِّمُكَ زَارُوا الْيَوْمَ مُعَلِّمِي فِي
الْمَدْرَسَةِ 10. بَيُوتُكَ الْجَدِيدَةُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ بَيُوتِهِمْ
الْجَدِيدَةِ 11. مَنْ رَأَى بَيْتِي الْجَدِيدَيْنِ؟ - أَنَا
رَأَيْتُهُمَا 12. كَلْبَا أَخِي أَكْبَرُ مِنْ كَلْبَيْكَ.

Vocabulary: 427. كَمْ "how many?" ; "how much?"

كَمْ بَيْتًا "how many houses?" 428. صَيَادٌ "hunter"

كَمْ مَرَّةً "how many times?" 429. صَادَ "to hunt" (Imperfect: يَصِيدُ)

ذَبَحَ "to slaughter" 430. دَائِمًا "always" 431. يَذْبَحُ (Imperfect: يَذْبَحُ)

بَكَى "to weep" 432. بَيْتِي "my house" 433. بَيْتِي "my house"

- سَالٌ 434. (ذُمُوعٌ: plural) "tear" (plural) 433. (يَبْكِي: Imperfect)
 شِدَّةٌ 436. عَيْنٌ 435. (يَسِيلُ: Imperfect) "to flow", "to run"
 سَلَمٌ عَلَى 438. "cold", "coolness" 437. بَرْدٌ
 (يُزَوِّرُ: Imperfect) "to visit" 439. زَارَ "to salute", "to greet"
 440. "if" 441. شَاءَ "to will", "to wish", "to desire"
 (إِنْ شَاءَ اللَّهُ) "God willing".

Translate: 1. His two new books are in my small room
 2. Where are our two dogs? — they are in the room of our grand-father
 3. How many books did thy father buy yesterday in the new shop? — My father bought yesterday two books
 4. How many hares did the hunter hunt yesterday in this forest? — he hunted yesterday two hares
 5. His brother visited me yesterday and I shall visit him in the after-noon
 6. Where are my two copy-books? — Thy (masc.) brother has taken them
 7. Who has seen to-day the two asses of my grand-father? — The brother of our neighbour saw them
 8. The teachers of the new school have to-day visited our teachers
 9. These two cows are fatter than our two cows
 10. Our two horses are bigger than your (masc.) two horses
 11. How many copy-books has thy (masc.) brother bought in the after-noon? — He has bought two copy-books
 12. Our sister is bigger than your (masc.) sister and your sister is bigger than his sister.

Fifty-first Lesson

صِيَالٌ وَعَصْفُورٌ

كَانَ صِيَالٌ يَصِيدُ عَصَافِيرَ فِي يَوْمٍ بَارِدٍ. فَكَانَ يَذْبَحُهَا وَالذَّمُوعُ تَسِيلُ مِنْ عَيْنَيْهِ مِنْ شِدَّةِ الْبَرْدِ.

فَقَالَ أَحَدُ الْمُصَافِيرِ لِصَاحِبِهِ: لَا تَخَفْ مِنْ هَذَا الرَّجُلِ. أَلَا تَرَاهُ يَبْكِي؟ — فَقَالَ لَهُ آخَرٌ. لَا تَنْظُرْ إِلَى ذُمُوعِهِ بَلْ إِلَى مَا تَصْنَعُ يَدَاهُ.

الرَّانِبُ وَتَعَالِبُ

الْأُنُورُ مَرَّةً وَقَمْتُ بَيْنَهُمْ وَبَيْنَ الْأَرَانِبِ حَرْبٌ. فَذَهَبَتِ الْأَرَانِبُ إِلَى الْأَتَالِبِ وَطَلَبُوا مِنْهُ أَنْ يُسَاعِدَهُمْ فِي مُحَارَبَةِ الْأُنُورِ. فَقَالُوا لَهُمْ: لَوْلَا عَرَفْنَا أَنَّ الْأُنُورَ الَّذِينَ يُحَارِبُونَهُمْ لَفَعَلْنَا ذَلِكَ.

Vocabulary: 442. بَارِدٌ "cold", "cool" 443.

نَظَرَ 445. "does he not see him?" 444. لَا يَرَاهُ "do not fear"

بَلَ 446. "do not look" 447. صَنَعَ "to make" (Imperfect: يَصْنَعُ)

وَقَعَ 448. "to fall" 449. حَرْبٌ "war", "battle" 450. سَاعَدَ "to help",

"to assist" (Imperfect: يُسَاعِدُ) 451. مَرَكَبَةٌ "bottle", "fight"

452. لَوْ "if" 453. حَارَبَ "to fight with"

(Imperfect: يَكْرِبُ) 454. لَ is a particle used for emphasis and it is omitted in translation e. g. لَعَلْنَا "truly" we have done it".

Fifty-second Lesson

"a big dog"	كَلْبٌ كَبِيرٌ
"a fat cow"	بَقْرَةٌ سَمِينَةٌ
"his dog is bigger than my dog" ⁽¹⁾	كَلْبُهُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ كَلْبِي
"his cow is fatter than her cow"	بَقْرَتُهُ أَشْمَنُ مِنْ بَقْرَتِهَا
"he is the biggest in this village"	هُوَ الْأَكْبَرُ فِي هَذِهِ الْقَرْيَةِ ⁽²⁾
"she is the biggest in this village"	هِيَ الْبِكْبَرَى فِي هَذِهِ الْقَرْيَةِ
"a red dog"	كَلْبٌ أَحْمَرٌ ⁽³⁾
"a red cow"	بَقْرَةٌ أَحْمَرَاءُ
"dumb children"	أَوْلَادٌ خُرُسٌ

(1) The comparative degree of the adjectives is always formed

on the pattern of أَكْبَرُ thus:

أَشْمَنُ مِنْ - "fatter than"

أَصْغَرُ مِنْ - "smaller than"

أَطْوَلُ مِنْ - "longer than" etc.

The comparative form is the same for all genders and numbers e. g.

كَلْبِي أَكْبَرُ مِنْ كَلْبِهَا "my dog is bigger than her dog"

بَقْرَتِي أَكْبَرُ مِنْ بَقْرَتِي "her cow is bigger than my cow";

كَلْبَاهُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ كَلْبِي "his two dogs are bigger than her two dogs"

(2) The comparative form is also used for the superlative. In this case it is always defined by the article e. g. هُوَ الْأَكْبَرُ "he is the biggest pupil (literally: the biggest of the pupils)", or by a pronominal suffix e. g. هُوَ أَكْبَرُهُمْ "he is the biggest of them".

هِيَ الْأَصْغَرَى "she is the smallest"; هِيَ الْأَشْمَنَى "she is the fattest"; هِيَ الْأَطْوَلَى "she is the tallest".

(3) The adjectives denoting colours or bodily defects have, in the masculine, the same form as comparatives. For example: كَلْبٌ أَحْمَرٌ "a red dog"; وَلَدٌ خُرْسٌ "a dumb child".

The feminine of these adjectives has the form of خُرْسَاءُ and the plural of these has the form of خُرُسٌ e. g.

بَنَاتٌ خُرُسَاءُ "a green tree"; شَجَرَةٌ خُرْسَاءُ "a dumb girl"; أَوْلَادٌ خُرُسٌ "dumb children".

Note: بَقْرَتَانِ خُرْسَاءَانِ - "two red cows" - In the Dual the Hamza of the fem. sing. is changed into و

Fifty-third Lesson

1. بَقَرَتِي أَكْبَرُ مِنْ بَقَرَتِكَ. هِيَ الْأَكْبَرَى فِي هَذِهِ الْقَرْيَةِ. 2. لِي بَقَرَتَانِ حَمْرَاوَانِ وَلَكِ بَقَرَتَانِ سَوْدَاوَانِ. 3. ذَبَحَ جَارِي الْيَوْمَ خَرُوفَيْنِ وَوَزَعَ اللَّحْمَ مَجَازًا بَيْنَ فُقَرَاءِ هَذِهِ الْحَارَةِ. 4. فَتَحَ جَارِنَا دُكَّانَ سَمَكٍ فِي السُّوقِ الَّذِي فِي الْمَدِينَةِ الْقَدِيمَةِ. هُوَ لِجَارِنَا الْأَوَّلَادِ خُرْسٌ وَأَوَّلَاثُكَ الْأَوَّلَادِ طُرَشٌ. 5. لِمَ جَارِنَا تَوَزَّرَ كَبِيرٌ وَسَمِينٌ. هُوَ الْأَكْبَرُ وَالْأَسْنَى فِي قَرْيَتِنَا. 6. أَخِي إِبْرَاهِيمُ يَدْرُسُ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ الْجَدِيدَةِ. هُوَ أَصْغَرُ التَّلَامِيذِ فِيهَا. 7. لَاخِي الْأَكْبَرُ سَيَّارَتَانِ كَبِيرَتَانِ اشْتَرَاهُمَا فِي الْقُدْسِ فِي السَّنَةِ الْمَاضِيَةِ. 8. الدُّرُوسُ فِي هَذَا الْكِتَابِ سَهْلَةٌ وَالْدُّرُوسُ فِي ذَلِكَ الْكِتَابِ صَعِبَةٌ. 9. هَذِهِ الدُّرُوسُ أَسْهَلُ مِنْ تِلْكَ الدُّرُوسِ. 10. هَذَا الْكُرْسِيُّ ثَقِيلٌ وَذَلِكَ الْكُرْسِيُّ خَفِيفٌ. 11. هَذَا الْكُرْسِيُّ أَثْقَلُ مِنْ

ذَلِكَ الْكُرْسِيِّ. 12. ذَلِكَ الْكُرْسِيُّ أَخَفُّ مِنْ هَذَا الْكُرْسِيِّ. 13. لِي بَيْتٌ جَدِيدٌ وَلِأَخِي بَيْتٌ جَدِيدٌ. 14. بَيْتُ أَخِي أَجَدُ مِنْ بَيْتِي. 15. أَخْنَأُ جَارِنَا الْخُرْسَاوَانِ زَارَتَا الْيَوْمَ أَخِي الْأَكْبِيرَةَ.

Vocabulary: 455. وَزَعَ "to distribute" (Imperfect: يُوزِعُ)

456. مَجَازًا "gratias" 457. سَمَكٌ "fish" 458. خُرْسٌ "dumb"

459. أَطْرَشٌ "deaf" 460. دَرَسَ "lesson" (plural: دُرُوسٌ)

461. سَهْلٌ "easy" 462. صَعِبٌ "difficult" 463. أَخَفُّ is the

comparative of خَفِيفٌ "light (in weight)" 464. أَجَدُ is the

comparative of جَدِيدٌ "new".

Translate:

1. His two camels are bigger than our two camels. 2. Our horse is the biggest horse in this village. 3. My brother bought yesterday two white cows. 4. These two white cows are fat. 5. This pupil is lazy and that pupil is diligent. 6. I have red ink and she has blue ink. 7. Where did thy (masc.) friend buy the red ink? — He bought the red ink in the new shop. 8. The lessons to-day are difficult. 9. These lessons are easier than those lessons. 10. Who opened this big window? — The pupil of my brother opened it. 11. Where is the white cow which I bought yesterday? — The white cow is in the garden of thy (masc.) grand-father. 12. This table is heavy and that table is light. 13. That table is lighter than this table. 14. This table is heavier than this table.

Fifty-fourth Lesson

الدُّكَّانُ الْجَدِيدُ

فَتَحَ رَجُلٌ دُكَّانَ سَمَكٍ. وَعَلَى فَوْقَ بَابِهِ
لَوْحًا صَغِيرًا كَتَبَ عَلَيْهِ: «هَذَا مُبَاعُ السَّمَكِ».
فَجَاءَ أَحَدُ أَصْدِقَائِهِ وَقَالَ لَهُ: لَمَّا كَتَبْتَ عَلَى
اللُّوحِ الْكَلِمَةَ «هَذَا» أَلَا مُبَاعُ السَّمَكِ إِلَّا فِي
دُكَّانِكَ، فَحَذَفَ صَاحِبُ الدُّكَّانِ الْكَلِمَةَ «هَذَا».
ثُمَّ جَاءَ صَدِيقٌ آخَرٌ فَقَالَ لَصَاحِبِ الدُّكَّانِ: لَمَّا
كَتَبْتَ عَلَى اللُّوحِ الْكَلِمَةَ «مُبَاعُ» أَلَا يَهْمُ
النَّاسُ أَنَّكَ لَا تُوزِعُ السَّمَكَ بِجَانًا. فَحَذَفَ
الْكَلِمَةَ «مُبَاعُ». ثُمَّ جَاءَ صَدِيقٌ ثَلَاثٌ وَقَالَ: لَمَّا
كَتَبْتَ الْكَلِمَةَ «سَمَكُ» أَلَا يَرَاهُ النَّاسُ وَلَا
يَسْمُونَهُ. فَزَعَجَ صَاحِبُ الدُّكَّانِ اللُّوحَ.
Vocabulary: 465. لَوْحٌ "board", "plate"
467. مُبَاعٌ "is sold" 468. كَلِمَةٌ "word" 469. حَذَفَ "to subtract"
470. ثَلَاثٌ "third" 471. سَمَكٌ "to smell" 472. نَزَعَ "to remove", "to take away".

Fifty-fifth Lesson

The Cardinal Numbers

A. The numerals too have each a masculine form and a feminine form as follows:

Arabic ciphers	Translation	Feminine numerals	Masculine numerals
١	one	وَاحِدَةٌ (إِحْدَى)	وَاحِدٌ (أَحَدٌ)
٢	two	إِثْنَانِ	إِثْنَانِ
٣	three	ثَلَاثٌ	ثَلَاثَةٌ (ثَلَاثَة)
٤	four	أَرْبَعٌ	أَرْبَعَةٌ
٥	five	خَمْسٌ	خَمْسَةٌ
٦	six	سِتٌّ	سِتَّةٌ
٧	seven	سَبْعٌ	سَبْعَةٌ
٨	eight	ثَمَانٍ	ثَمَانِيَةٌ
٩	nine	تِسْعٌ	تِسْعَةٌ
١٠	ten	عَشْرٌ	عَشْرَةٌ
١١	eleven	إِحْدَى عَشْرَةَ	أَحَدٌ عَشَرَ
١٢	twelve	إِثْنًا عَشْرَةَ	إِثْنَا عَشَرَ

Arabic ciphers	Translation	Feminine numerals	Masculine numerals
١٣	thirteen	ثَلَاثَ عَشْرَةٍ	ثَلَاثَةَ عَشَرَ
١٤	fourteen	أَرْبَعَ عَشْرَةَ	أَرْبَعَةَ عَشَرَ
١٥	fifteen	خَمْسَ عَشْرَةَ	خَمْسَةَ عَشَرَ
١٦	sixteen	سِتَّ عَشْرَةَ	سِتَّةَ عَشَرَ
١٧	seventeen	سَبْعَ عَشْرَةَ	سَبْعَةَ عَشَرَ
١٨	eighteen	ثَمَانِيَ عَشْرَةَ	ثَمَانِيَةَ عَشَرَ
١٩	nineteen	تِسْعَ عَشْرَةَ	تِسْعَةَ عَشَرَ
٢٠	twenty	عِشْرُونَ	عِشْرُونَ
٣٠	thirty	ثَلَاثُونَ	ثَلَاثُونَ
٤٠	fourty	أَرْبَعُونَ	أَرْبَعُونَ
٥٠	fifty	خَمْسُونَ	خَمْسُونَ
٦٠	sixty	سِتُّونَ	سِتُّونَ
٧٠	seventy	سَبْعُونَ	سَبْعُونَ
٨٠	eighty	ثَمَانُونَ	ثَمَانُونَ
٩٠	ninety	تِسْعُونَ	تِسْعُونَ
١٠٠	hundred	مِائَةٌ (مِائَةٌ)	مِائَةٌ

masculine and feminine

مِائَتَانِ (مِئَتَانِ or) 200 (٢٠٠)؛ ثَلَاثُمِائَةٍ (ثَلَاثِمِئَةٍ or)

300 (٣٠٠)؛ أَرْبَعُمِائَةٍ 400 (٤٠٠)؛ خَمْسُمِائَةٍ 500 (٥٠٠)؛

سِتُّمِائَةٍ 600 (٦٠٠)؛ سَبْعُمِائَةٍ 700 (٧٠٠)؛ ثَمَانُمِائَةٍ 800

(٨٠٠)؛ تِسْعُمِائَةٍ 900 (٩٠٠)

أَلْفٌ 1000 (١٠٠٠)؛ أَلْفَانِ 2000 (٢٠٠٠)؛ ثَلَاثَةُ أَلْفٍ

3000 (٣٠٠٠)؛ أَرْبَعَةُ أَلْفٍ 4000 (٤٠٠٠)؛ خَمْسَةُ أَلْفٍ

5000 (٥٠٠٠)

أَحَدُ عَشَرَ أَلْفًا 11000 (١١,٠٠٠)؛ اثْنَا عَشَرَ أَلْفًا

12000 (١٢,٠٠٠)؛ ثَلَاثَةُ عَشَرَ أَلْفًا 13000 (١٣,٠٠٠)؛

عِشْرُونَ أَلْفًا 20000 (٢٠,٠٠٠)؛ خَمْسُونَ أَلْفًا 50000

(٥٠,٠٠٠)؛ مِئَةُ أَلْفٍ 100 000 (١٠٠,٠٠٠)؛ أَلْفُ أَلْفٍ

(مِليونٌ or) 1,000,000 (١,٠٠٠,٠٠٠)؛ صِفْرٌ Zero.

B. In compound numbers from 21 to 99 the units are put before the tens and are connected by وَ ("and"), the units having each a masculine or a feminine form e. g.

٦٣ (fem.)؛ ثَلَاثٌ وَسِتُّونَ 63 (fem.)؛ ثَلَاثَةٌ وَسِتُّونَ

٧٥ (fem.)؛ خَمْسٌ وَسَبْعُونَ 75 (fem.)؛ خَمْسَةٌ وَسَبْعُونَ

٩٦ (fem.)؛ سِتٌّ وَسِتُّونَ 96 (fem.)؛ سِتَّةٌ وَسِتُّونَ

In compound numbers of thousands, hundreds, tens and units the largest number is put first, but the units are put before the tens e. g.

أَلْفٌ 1223 (١٢٢٣)؛

أَلْفَانِ 2534 (٢٥٣٤)؛

أَلْفَانِ وَخَمْسِمِائَةٍ وَارْبَعَةٌ وَثَلَاثُونَ 15476 (١٥٤٧٦)؛

C. (1) The numeral 1 follows the noun e. g.

أَحَدٌ وَاحِدٌ "one ass" (masc.); بَقَرَةٌ وَاحِدَةٌ "one cow" (fem.).

The numeral "one" (أَحَدٌ) is used only before

a plural in genitive and is to be translated "one of the.." e. g.

أَحَدُ الرِّجَالِ "one of the men", أَحَدُ النِّسَاءِ "one of the women".

(2) اِثْنَانِ (fem. اِثْنَتَانِ) "is used only without a noun e. g.

كَمْ بَحَارًا لَهُ وَكَمْ لَهَا — لَهُ اِثْنَانِ وَلَهَا ثَلَاثَةٌ "how

many asses has he and how many has she ? — he has two and she has three".

اِثْنَانِ (fem. اِثْنَتَانِ) is not used with a noun

because the Dual of the noun itself denotes the number "two"

e. g. بَقَرَتَانِ "two cows", جِوَارَانِ "two asses".

(3) The numerals 3—10 are followed by the noun in the Genitive

Plural e. g. ثَلَاثَةُ كُتُبٍ "three books", اَرْبَعَةُ كِلَابٍ "four dogs", خَمْسَةُ مُعَلِّمِينَ "five teachers" etc.

(a) The numerals 11—19 are followed by the noun in the Accus.

ثَلَاثَةَ أَحَدَ عَشَرَ جِوَارًا Sing. e. g. "11 asses";

ثَلَاثَ وَأَرْبَعُونَ بَقَرَةً "43 books";

"43 cows".

(b) The numerals 100, 1000 are followed by the noun in the

Gen. Sing. e. g. مِائَةُ سَنَةٍ "100 years";

أَلْفُ كِتَابٍ "1000 books";

"500 years";

مِائَةُ وَعِشْرُونَ كِتَابًا "200 books";

مِائَةُ وَخَمْسَةُ كُتُبٍ "105 books".

D. The numerals 11—19 are indeclinable e. g.

فِي أَحَدَ عَشَرَ كِتَابًا "11 books";

فِي اِثْنَانِ أَحَدَ عَشَرَ كِتَابًا "in 11 books";

اِثْنَتَا عَشْرَةَ (fem. اِثْنَتَا عَشْرَةَ) which is

in the Gen. and in the Acc. اِثْنَتَا عَشْرَةَ

(fem. اِثْنَتَا عَشْرَةَ).

The other numerals are declinable e. g. فِي خَمْسَةِ كُتُبٍ

"in five books"; قَرَأْتُ خَمْسَةَ كُتُبٍ "I read 5 books";

قَرَأْتُ عِشْرِينَ كِتَابًا "in 20 books"; فِي عِشْرِينَ كِتَابًا

١ read ٢٠٥ books. ١ قرأت خمسة وعشرين كتاباً. ٢ read 20 books. ٢ قرأت مائتين وخمسة كتب.

Fifty-sixth Lesson

١. لاخي الكبير سيارتان كبيرتان إحداهما سيارة ركاب والأخرى سيارة شحن. ٢. في الأسبوع سبعة أيام وهي: يوم الأحد ويوم الاثنين ويوم الثلاثاء ويوم الأربعاء ويوم الخميس ويوم الجمعة ويوم السبت. ٣. في اليوم أربع وعشرون ساعة وفي الساعة ستون دقيقة وفي نصف الساعة ثلاثون دقيقة وفي ربع الساعة خمس عشرة دقيقة وفي ثلث الساعة عشرون دقيقة. أما الدقيقة ففيها ستون ثانية. ٤. في كل جنيه فلسطيني مائة غرش وفي كل غرش عشرة ملات. ٥. بكم اشتريت اليوم ثيابا وبكم اشتريت عباءة؟ - اشتريت اليوم ثيابا بسبعة غروش وعباءة بثلاثة عشر غرشا. ٥. بكم اشتريت هذين الحذاءين؟ - اشتريت أحدهما بسنة

ملات والأخرى اشتريت بعشرين ملاً. ٧. ابنكم أنت (أو: عمرك كم سنة)؟ - أنا ابن خمس عشرة سنة (أو: عمري خمس عشرة سنة). ٨. أنا ابن خمس وعشرين سنة (أو: عمري خمس وعشرون سنة). ٩. واخي الكبير ابن ثلاث وثلاثين سنة (أو: وعمري انخي الكبير ثلاث وثلاثون سنة). ١٠. اشتريت انني عشر كتاباً. انخي الصغير كان في يافا مرتين وفي حيفا أربع مرات وفي القدس انني عشرة مرة.

Vocabulary: 473. "passenger" (plural: ركاب) 474. "freight", "cargo", "load" (جمعه: أسبوع) 475. "load" (جمعه: أسبوع)

476. "Sunday" (plural: يوم) 477. "Monday" (plural: يوم) 478. "Tuesday" (plural: يوم)

479. "Wednesday" (plural: يوم) 480. "Thursday" (plural: يوم)

481. "Friday" (plural: يوم) 482. "Saturday" (plural: يوم)

483. "minute" (plural: دقيقة) 484. "minute" (plural: دقيقة)

- *half* 485. رُبْعٌ *quarter* 486. ثُلُثٌ 1/3 487. ثَانِيَةٌ *second*
 (plural: ثَوَانٌ) 488. جُنَيْدٌ *pound* 489. غِرْشٌ *piastre*
 (plural: مِلَّاتٌ) 490. مِلٌّ *mil* (plural: مِلَّاتٌ) 491. أَوْ
 or 492. هُوَ كَمْ سَنَةً (or) إِبْنُ كَمْ هُوَ *how old*
 he is two years old 493. هُوَ ابْنُ سَنَتَيْنِ (or) هُوَ سَنَتَانِ

1. فِي هَذَا الشَّارِعِ خَمْسَةٌ وَأَرْبَعُونَ بَيْتًا وَفِي
 ذَلِكَ الشَّارِعِ سَبْعَةٌ وَعِشْرُونَ بَيْتًا 2. أَيْنَ تَعَلَّمْتَ
 اللُّغَةَ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ؟ — تَعَلَّمْتُهَا فِي مَدْرَسَةٍ مَسَائِيَّةٍ 3. فِي
 هَذِهِ الدِّيْنَةِ أَرْبَعُ مَدَارِسَ مَسَائِيَّةٍ لِلْعَمَلِ
 الْقِرَاءَةِ وَالْكِتَابَةِ 4. هَلْ يَعْرِفُ هَذَا الْفَلَاحُ الْقِرَاءَةَ
 وَالْكِتَابَةَ؟ — لَا هَذَا الْفَلَاحُ لَا يَعْرِفُ لَا الْقِرَاءَةَ
 وَلَا الْكِتَابَةَ هُوَ أَحْيٌ 5. إِفْرَأ يَا أَحْمَدُ مَا كَتَبْتُ
 عَلَى اللُّوْحِ 6. قَالَ الْعَلِيمُ لِتَلْمِيذِهِ اقْرَأ يَا ابْنُ هَيْهَاتٍ مَا
 كَتَبَ زَيْدٌ عَلَى اللُّوْحِ 7. فِي هَذِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ الْمَسَائِيَّةِ
 مِئَتَةٌ وَخَمْسُونَ تَلْمِيذًا 8. زَوْجَتُهُ جَارِنَا لَا تَعْرِفُ
 الْقِرَاءَةَ وَلَا الْكِتَابَةَ هِيَ أُمِّيَّةٌ 9. زَوْجُ هَذِهِ

الْأَمْرَاءُ يَدْرُسُ اللُّغَةَ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ فِي إِحْدَى الْمَدَارِسِ
 الْمَسَائِيَّةِ 10. لَا يَ أَنْتَا عَشْرَةٌ بَقَرَةٌ وَخَمْسَةٌ جَمَالٍ.

Vocabulary: 494. مَدْرَسَةٌ مَسَائِيَّةٌ *evening school*
 495. تَعْلِيمٌ *instruction* 496. عَامِلٌ *workman*, "doer" (plur. عَمَالٌ)
 497. قِرَاءَةٌ *reading* 498. كِتَابَةٌ *writing* 499. أُتْمِي *illiterate*
 (fem. أُمِّيَّةٌ) 500. The Alif in إِفْرَأ is Hamzat-i-wasl 501. زَوْجٌ
 husband* 502. زَوْجَةٌ *wife* 503. أَمْرَأَةٌ *woman*.

Translate: 1. How many pupils are there in this school?
 — in this school there are ninety-four pupils 2. My grand-
 mother has three big dogs and my uncle (on the mother's side) has
 two dogs 3. In this book there are sixty lessons and in
 that book there are sixty-seven lessons 4. In this room there
 are four windows and in the room of my sister there are three
 windows 5. In the afternoon I bought five books in the new
 shop 6. How many books has thy (masc.) pupil? — He has
 fourteen books 7. How old is the brother of our neighbour?
 — he is nineteen years old 8. This peasant is illiterate and
 his wife too is illiterate. 9. How many times was our neighbour
 in Jaffa? — He was there twice or three times 10. I read this
 book twice and my sister read it once 11. In this village
 there are two evening schools.

Fifty-seventh Lesson

الشَّيْخُ وَالْمَلِكُ

رَأَى مَلِكٌ شَيْخًا وَاحِدًا يَقْرَأُ نَحْلًا. فَقَالَ لَهُ:
 أَيُّهَا الشَّيْخُ أَتَوْسَمِلُ أَنْ تَأْكُلَ مِنْ مَتَرِ هَذَا النَّحْلِ

وَهُوَ لَا يُثِيرُ إِلَّا بَعْدَ سِنِينَ كَثِيرَةٍ.

فَقَالَ الشَّيْخُ: أَفَرَسَ الدَّخْلُ لِيَا كُلَّ أَحْفَادِي

مِنْ ثَمَرِهِ كَمَا أَكَلْتُ أَنَا مِمَّا خَرَسَ جَدِّي.

فَاسْتَحْسَنَ الْبَيْتُ ذَلِكَ وَأَعْطَاهُ عِشْرِينَ دِينَارًا.

فَأَخَذَهَا الشَّيْخُ وَقَالَ: أَيُّهَا الْبَيْتُ لَقَدْ أَكَلْتُ

أَنَا بِنَفْسِي مِنْ ثَمَرِ هَذَا الدَّخْلِ. فَتَعَجَّبَ الْبَيْتُ

مِنْ كَلَامِهِ وَأَعْطَاهُ عِشْرِينَ دِينَارًا أُخْرَى:

فَأَخَذَهَا وَقَالَ: أَيُّهَا الْبَيْتُ وَاعْجَبُ مِنْ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ

أَنْ الدَّخْلُ قَدْ أَثْمَرَ السَّنَةَ مَرَّتَيْنِ. فَتَعَجَّبَ الْبَيْتُ مِنْ

كَلَامِهِ وَأَعْطَاهُ عِشْرِينَ دِينَارًا أُخْرَى.

Vocabulary: 504. أَيُّهَا is a vocative particle 505. ائْمَلْ

"to hope" (Imperf.) 506. ائْمَلْ (يُؤْمَلُ) "to hear

fruit", "to produce fruit" (Imperf.) 508. كَمَا "as", "just as"

509. دِينَارٌ "Dinar" 510. ائْتَحَسَنَ "to approve" 511. نَفْسٌ "soul", "self"

512. نَعَجِبَ مِنْ "I wonder at" 513. عَجِيبٌ "wonderful".

Fifty-eighth Lesson

The Ordinal Numbers

Translation	Feminine	Masculine
the first	الْأُولَى	الْأَوَّلُ
the second	الثَّانِيَةُ	الثَّانِي
the third	الثَّالِثَةُ	الثَّالِثُ
the fourth	الرَّابِعَةُ	الرَّابِعُ
the fifth	الْخَامِسَةُ	الْخَامِسُ
the sixth	الْسَّادِسَةُ	الْسَّادِسُ
the seventh	السَّابِعَةُ	السَّابِعُ
the eighth	الثَّامِنَةُ	الثَّامِنُ
the ninth	التَّاسِعَةُ	التَّاسِعُ
the tenth	الْعَاشِرَةُ	الْعَاشِرُ
the eleventh	الْحَادِيَةُ عَشْرَةَ	الْحَادِي عَشَرَ
the twelfth	الثَّانِيَةُ عَشْرَةَ	الثَّانِي عَشَرَ
the thirteenth	الثَّالِثَةُ عَشْرَةَ	الثَّالِث عَشَرَ
the fourteenth	الرَّابِعَةُ عَشْرَةَ	الرَّابِع عَشَرَ
etc.	etc.	etc.

For the ordinals from 20 on the cardinal numbers are used e. g.

الْبَيْتُ الْعِشْرُونَ "the twentieth house",

الْبَيْتُ الْمِائَةُ وَالْأَرْبَعُونَ "the hundred and fourth house"

The compound ordinals of the tens and units are as follows:

Masculine		Feminine	
the 21 st	الْحَادِي وَالْعِشْرُونَ	الْحَادِيَّةُ وَالْعِشْرُونَ	
the 32 nd	الثَّانِي وَالثَّلَاثُونَ	الثَّانِيَّةُ وَالثَّلَاثُونَ	
the 54 th	الرَّابِعُ وَالْخَمْسُونَ	الرَّابِيعَةُ وَالْخَمْسُونَ	
etc.	etc.	etc.	

The ordinals from 11-19 are indeclinable e. g.

"in the 11th house";

"in the 13th school".

1. الدَّرْسُ وَالْعَاشِرُ فِي هَذَا الْكِتَابِ أَسهلُ مِنْ

الدَّرْسِ السَّادِسَ عَشَرَ وَالدَّرْسِ الثَّالِثَ وَالْخَمْسُونَ

أَصعبُ مِنَ الدَّرْسِ الْحَادِي عَشَرَ 2. حَرَّتْ هَذَا

الْفَلَاحُ حَقْلَهُ الْيَوْمَ مِنَ السَّاعَةِ الْخَامِسَةِ صَبَاحًا

إِلَى السَّاعَةِ الْحَادِيَةِ عَشْرَةٍ 3. أَخِي يَحْرُثُ حَقْلَهُ

مَرَّتَيْنِ فِي كُلِّ يَوْمٍ الْفَرَّةَ الْأُولَى مِنَ السَّاعَةِ

السَّادِسَةَ صَبَاحًا وَالْفَرَّةَ الثَّانِيَةَ مِنَ السَّاعَةِ الثَّانِيَةِ

إِلَى السَّاعَةِ الْخَامِسَةِ بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ 4. قَدْ انْشَيْتُ فِي

هَذِهِ الدِّيَارَةِ جَمْعِيَّةَ الْحَارَبَةِ الْأُمِّيَّةِ 5. غَايَةُ هَذِهِ

الْجَمْعِيَّةِ هِيَ مُحَارَبَةُ الْأُمِّيَّةِ 6. اشْتَرَى الْفَلَاحُ فِي

هَذَا الدُّكَّانِ مِنْجَلًا وَزَوْجَتَهُ اشْتَرَتْ فِيهِ سِكِّينًا

7. ذَلِكَ الْكِتَابُ مُؤَلَّفٌ مِنْ ثَلَاثَةِ أَجْزَاءٍ. فِي

الْجُزْءِ الْأَوَّلِ مِائَتَانِ وَخَمْسٌ وَعِشْرُونَ صَفْحَةً وَفِي

الْجُزْءِ الثَّانِي ثَلَاثُمِائَةٍ وَارْبَعٌ وَسِتُونَ صَفْحَةً وَفِي

الْجُزْءِ الثَّالِثِ مِائَتَانِ وَسِتٌ وَمِائُونَ صَفْحَةً.

Vocabulary: 514. حَرَّثَ "to plough" (impert. (يَحْرُثُ

515. مُحَارَبَةٌ "to be created" 516. جَمْعِيَّةٌ "society" 517. غَايَةُ

"combat", "oppose" 518. أُمِّيَّةٌ "illiterateness" 519. "object";

سِكِّينَ 520. مِئَاتَانِ (plur. "sickle", "scythe" 521. مُؤَلَّفٌ مِنْ

"knife" (plur. "part" 522. "is composed of"

523. جُزْءٌ "page", 524. صَفْحَةٌ "part" (plur. أَجْزَاءٌ

Translate: 1. The book of my brother is composed of two parts, in the first part there are three hundred and fifty-five pages and in the second part there are four hundred and thirty-nine pages. 2. I was yesterday in Jerusalem from eight o'clock in the morning until three o'clock after-noon. 3. The sixteenth lesson in this book is more difficult than the thirty-seventh lesson. 4. Where is the second part of this English book? — It is in my room on the table. 5. When has thy (masc.) brother written his Arabic lessons? — He wrote them from six to eight o'clock in the evening. 6. How many camels has your (masc.) grandfather? — Our grandfather has twenty-five camels. 7. Where is the third part of this book? — It is in the room of our sister. 8. What has thy (masc.) sister written in the afternoon? — She has written the sixteenth lesson. 9. This lesson is easier than the twenty-eighth lesson. 10. How many lessons are there in this book? — In this book there are fifty-seven lessons.

Fifty-ninth Lesson

مَحَارِبَةُ الْأُمِّيَّةِ

أُنشِيتْ جَمِيعَةُ فِي أَحَدِ الْمَدَنِ غَايَتًا مُحَارِبَةً الْأُمِّيَّةِ.
فَفَتَحَتْ هَذِهِ الْجَمِيعَةُ مَدَارِسَ لَيْلِيَّةٍ فِي الْقُرَى
وَالْمَدَنِ لِتَعْلِيمِ الْفَلَاحِيْنَ وَالْعَمَالِ الْقِرَاءَةَ وَالْكِتَابَةَ.
فَارْسَلَتْ هَذِهِ الْجَمِيعَةُ يَوْمًا مُقْتَسِمًا إِلَى إِحْدَى
الْقُرَى بِجُمْلٍ الْمَدَايَا لِلَّذِينَ يَعْلَمُونَ فِي هَذِهِ
الْمَدَارِسِ اللَّيْلِيَّةِ تَشْجِيمًا لَهُمْ. فَاجْتَمَعَ الْفَلَاحُونَ
حَوْلَهُ. فَقَدَا الْمَقْفِشُ أَمْرًا مِنْهُمْ وَطَلَبَ مِنْهَا أَنْ
تَهْرَأَ كَلِمَةً أَشَارَ إِلَيْهَا فِي كِتَابٍ كَانَ فِي يَدِهِ.

فَهَرَأَتْ بِصَوْتٍ عَالٍ «مَنْدِيل» فَقَالَ لَهَا: أَحْسَنْتِ
وَأَعْطَاهَا مَنْدِيلًا. ثُمَّ دَعَا رَجُلًا: قَرَأْ بِسُرْعَةٍ «مَنْجَل».
فَقَالَ الْمَقْفِشُ: أَحْسَنْتِ وَأَعْطَاهُ مَنْجَلًا.

ثُمَّ دَعَا آخَرَ وَطَلَبَ مِنْهُ أَنْ يَرَأَ كَلِمَةً أَشَارَ
إِلَيْهَا. فَرَأَى بِسُرْعَةٍ «تَوْر» وَكَانَتْ الْكَلِمَةُ سَيِّئًا
آخَرَ. فَقَالَ لَهُ الْمَقْفِشُ: انْظُرْ جَيِّدًا وَاقْرَأ. فَقَضَّرَ
الرَّجُلُ مَرَّةً أُخْرَى وَقَالَ «تَوْر». فَقَامَتْ زَوْجَتُهُ
وَقَالَتْ: زَوْجِي يُحْسِنُ الْقِرَاءَةَ وَالْكِتَابَةَ فِي حَاجَةِ
شَدِيدَةٍ إِلَى تَوْرٍ يَحْرُثُ بِهِ الْأَرْضَ.

Vocabulary: 525. ارْسَلْ "to send" (Imper.).

526. هَدَايَا "present" (plural: هَدَايَا) "inspector" 527. مُقْتَسِمٌ "inspector"

528. تَشْجِيمٌ "encouragement" 529. اجْتَمَعَ "to be gathered";

"to assemble" 530. حَوْلَ "about"; "round" 531. دَعَا "to call";

"to invite" (دَعَا "called") 532. احْسَنْ "to do (something)

well" (Imperfect: احْسِنِي) 533. سُرْعَةً "speed", "haste";

جَيِّدٌ 534. انْظُرْ "look" (Imperative: انْظُرْ) 535. رَاسِدٌ "rapidly"

"well", "good" 536. قَامَ "to stand up", "to rise" 537. حَاجَةٌ "need".

Sixtieth Lesson

الرَّجُلُ وَالْمَوْتُ

رَجُلٌ مَرَّةً حَمَلَ خُرْمَةً حَطَبٍ مِنَ الْغَابَةِ
الْقَرِيبَةِ إِلَى بَيْتِهِ. فَتَقَاتَ عَلَيْهِ. فَلَمَّا تَعَبَ مِنْ
حَمْلِهَا رَمَى بِهَا عَنْ كَتِفِهِ وَدَعَا عَلَى نَفْسِهِ بِالْمَوْتِ.
فَتَخَصَّصَ لَهُ الْمَوْتُ وَقَالَ: هَا أَنَا ذَا، لَإِذَا دَعَوْتَنِي؟
فَقَالَ لَهُ الرَّجُلُ دَعْوَتُكَ لِأَحْمِلَنِي هَذِهِ خُرْمَةً
الْمَطْبِ عَلَى كَتِفِي.

Vocabulary: 538. مَوْتُ "death" 539. ثَقُلَ "to be heavy"

رَمَى 542. حَمَلَ "carrying" 541. تَعَبَ "to become tired" 540

تَخَصَّصَ 544. كَتِفُ "shoulder" 543. "to throw down"

حَمَلَ 546. هَا أَنَا ذَا "see, I am here!" 545. "to appear"

(يَحْمِلُ : imperfect) "to load", "to charge"

ENGLISH - ARABIC

VOCABULARY

Note 1: This vocabulary is only for the exercises in this book which are to be translated from English into Arabic.

Note 2: About the radical letters of the verbs see page 30, Notes 1-2.

Note 3: About the **Imperfect** see lesson 19.

Note 4: As to the **broken plural** see lesson 41.

A

q see lesson 23 (3)

after بَعْدَ

also أَيْضًا

always دَائِمًا

an see lesson 23 (3)

and فِ and وَ (see page 70, Note 2)

animal حَيَوَانٌ

- plural: حَيَوَانَاتٌ

to answer أَجَابَ

- imperfect: يُجِيبُ

apple تَفَاحٌ (see page 112, Note)

Arabic عَرَبِيٌّ

اللُّغَةُ الْعَرَبِيَّةُ
- the Arabic language

are and art see is

as for; as to أَمَّا

to ask سَأَلَ

- imperfect: يَسْأَلُ

to ask for طَلَبَ

- imperfect: يَطْلُبُ

ass حِمَارٌ

- plural: حِمَارٌ

aunt عَمَّةٌ (on the father's side)

حَالَةٌ (on the mother's side)

B

Baker خَبَازٌ

- plural: خَبَازُونَ

barber خَلَّاقٌ

- plural: خَلَّاقُونَ

to be كَانَ

يَكُونُ
- imperfect:

bear دُبٌّ

- plural: أُدْبَابٌ

to bear حَمَلَ

- imperfect: يَحْمِلُ

beat	صَبَرَ	bigger	أكْبَرُ
imperfect:	يَصْبِرُ	bird	عَصْفُورٌ
beautiful	جَمِيلٌ	plural:	عَصَافِيرُ
because	لِأَنَّ	black	اَسْوَدُ
because	لِأَنِّي	fem. & plur.	سَوْدَاءُ
because he etc.	لِأَنَّهُ	plur.	مَسُودٌ
before	قَبْلَ	blacksmith	سَاحِابُ
(temporal)	قَبْلَ	plur.	حَدَّادُونَ
أَمَامَ	(local)	blue	أَزْرَقُ
قُدَّامَ	(local)	زرقاء	زَرْقَاءُ
behind	خَلْفَ	fem. & plur.	زُرْقَى
believe	ظَنَّ	book	كِتَابٌ
imperfect:	يُظَنَّ	plur.	كُتُبٌ
bench	بَنْكٌ	boy	وَلَدٌ
plur.	بَنُوكٌ	أولاد	أَوْلَادٌ
better than	خَيْرٌ مِنْ	bread	خُبْزٌ
between	بَيْنَ	break	كَسْرٌ
big	كَبِيرٌ		

imperfect:	يَكْسِرُ	butter	زُبْدَةٌ
brother	أَخٌ	buy	اِشْتَرَى
plur. & plur.	أَخَوَةٌ and إِخْوَانٌ	I bought	اِشْتَرَيْتُ
cage	قَفَصٌ	C	
plur.	أَقْفَاصٌ		
camel	جَمَلٌ	cheese	جُبْنٌ (see page 112, Note)
plur.	جَمَالٌ	child	وَلَدٌ
carpenter	بَجَّارٌ	plur.	أَوْلَادٌ
plur.	بَجَّارُونَ	city	مَدِينَةٌ
carry	حَمَلَ	plur.	مَدَنٌ
imperfect:	يَحْمِلُ	clean	نَظِيفٌ
cat	قِطٌّ and هِرٌّ	cleaner	أَنْظَفٌ
she-cat	قِطَّةٌ and هِرَّةٌ	clock	سَاعَةٌ
chair	كُرْسِيٌّ	three o'clock	السَّاعَةُ الثَّلَاثَةُ
plur.	كُرْسِيٌّ	five o'clock	السَّاعَةُ الْخَامِسَةُ
cheap	رَخِيصٌ	cock	دِيكٌ
cheaper	أَرْخَصٌ	plur.	دِيكٌ
		coffee	قَهْوَةٌ
		come	جَاءَ

— I came	جِئْتُ	— plural :	دَفَاتِيرُ
company	شِرْكَةٌ and شِرْكَةٌ		بَقَرَةٌ
composed	مُؤَلَّفٌ		فِنْجَانٌ
copy-book	دَفْتَرٌ	— plural :	فَنْجَانِينَ
D			
daughter	بِنْتُ and ابْنَةٌ		صَعْبٌ
— plural :	بَنَاتٌ		مُجْتَهِدٌ
day	يَوْمٌ		مُدِيرٌ
— plural :	أَيَّامٌ		وَسِيعٌ
— day (opposite of night)	نَهَارٌ	to divide	قَسَمَ
deaf	أُطْرَشٌ	— imperfect :	يُقسِمُ
— fem.	طَرَشَاءُ		كَلْبٌ
— plur.	طَرَشٌ	— plural :	كِلَابٌ
dear (price)	قَالٍ		بَابٌ
— dearer than	أَعْلَى مِنْ	— plural :	أَبْوَابٌ
to descend	نَزَلَ	to drink	شَرَبَ
— imperfect :	يَنْزِلُ	— imperfect :	يَشْرَبُ
different	مُخْتَلِفٌ	to draw (sketch)	رَسَمَ
		— imperfect :	يَرْسُمُ

— imperative :	أَرْسُمُ	— fem.	خَرَسَاءُ
dumb	أَخْرَسٌ	— plural :	خُرَسٌ
E			
easy	سَهْلٌ	— plural :	أَفْعَالٌ
— easier	أَسْهَلٌ		أَحَدٌ عَشَرَ
to eat	أَكَلَ	— feminine :	إِحْدَى عَشْرَةَ
— imperfect :	يَأْكُلُ	— the eleventh	أَلْحَادِي عَشَرَ
eight	ثَمَانِيَةٌ	— feminine :	أَلْحَادِيَّةٌ عَشْرَةٌ
— feminine :	ثَمَانٍ		English
— the eighth	الْثَامِينَ	— the English Language	اللُّغَةُ الْإِنْكَلِيزِيَّةُ
— eighteen	ثَمَانِيَّةٌ عَشَرَ	to enter	دَخَلَ
— feminine :	ثَمَانِيَّةٌ عَشْرَةٌ	— imperfect :	يَدْخُلُ
— the eighteenth	الْثَامِينَ عَشَرَ	evening	مَسَاءٌ
— eighty	ثَمَانُونَ	— evening school	مَدْرَسَةٌ مَسَائِيَّةٌ
elephant	فِيلٌ	eye	عَيْنٌ
F			
face	وَجْهٌ	far	بَعِيدٌ
— plural :	وُجُوهُ	— farther	أَبْعَدُ

farmer	فَلاحٌ
— plural :	فَلاحُونَ
fat	سَمِينٌ
— fatter	أَسْمَنُ
father	وَالِدٌ and أَبٌ
field	حَقْلٌ
— plural :	حُقُولٌ
to find	وَجَدَ
fire-wood	حَطَبٌ
the first	الأَوَّلُ
— feminine :	الأُولَى
fish	سَمَكٌ
five	خَمْسَةٌ
— feminine :	خَمْسٌ
— the fifth	الخَامِسُ
— fifteen	خَمْسَةَ عَشَرَ
— feminine :	خَمْسَةَ عَشْرَةٍ
— fifty	خَمْسُونَ
food	طَعَامٌ
foolish	أَهْوَقٌ
foot	رِجْلٌ
forest	غَابَةٌ
fortunate	سَعِيدٌ
four	أَرْبَعَةٌ
— feminine :	أَرْبَعٌ
— the fourth	الرَّابِعُ
— fourteen	أَرْبَعَةَ عَشَرَ
— feminine :	أَرْبَعَةَ عَشْرَةٍ
— forty	أَرْبَعُونَ
fox	ثَعْلَبٌ
— plural :	ثَعْلَابٌ
Friday	يَوْمَ الْجُمُعَةِ
friend	صَدِيقٌ
— plural :	أَصْدِقَاءٌ
from	مِنْ

G

garden	حَدِيقَةٌ and بَيْتَانٌ
— plural :	حَدَائِقٌ and بَيْتَاتٍ
gate	بَابٌ
— plural :	أَبْوَابٌ
girl	ابْنَةٌ and بِنْتُ
— plural :	بَنَاتٌ
to go	ذَهَبَ
— Imperfect :	يَذْهَبُ
to go out	خَرَجَ
— Imperfect :	يَخْرُجُ
God	إِلَهُ
good	جَيِّدٌ and طَيِّبٌ
— better than	خَيْرٌ مِنْ
grand-father	جَدٌّ
grand-mother	جَدَّةٌ
grand-son	حَفِيدٌ
gratis	مَجَّانًا
great	كَبِيرٌ
— greater	أَكْبَرُ
green	أَخْضَرٌ
— feminine :	خَضِرَاءٌ
— plural :	خَضِرٌ

H

haste	عَجَلَةٌ and سُرْعَةٌ
— in haste	بِسُرْعَةٍ and بِعَجَلَةٍ
to have	لِي (See page 15)
— have	as auxiliary verb see lesson 11 B.
he	هُوَ
— he has	لَهُ (See also lesson 11. B)

head رَأْسٌ	horse حصانٌ
— plural : رؤوسٌ	— plural : أحصنةٌ
to hear سَمِعَ	hour ساعةٌ
— Imperfect : يَسْمَعُ	house بيتٌ
heart قَلْبٌ	— plural : بيوتٌ
— plural : قُلُوبٌ	how ? كيفَ
heavy ثَقِيلٌ	— how many ? كمَ
— heavier أَثْقَلُ	See page 121 vocabulary
hen دِجاجةٌ	— how much ? كمَ
her هَا (suffix) See lesson 8 and lesson 46, A. B.	— how old ? كمَ ابنٌ
here هُنَا	See page 136 vocabulary
him هُوَ (suffix) See lesson 17	— hundred مائةٌ and مئةٌ
his هُوَ (suffix) See lesson 8 and lesson 46, A. B.	to hunt صَادَ
holy مُقَدَّسٌ	— Imperfect : يَصِيدُ
	hunter صَيَّادٌ
	— plural : صيَّادونٌ

I

أَنَا	مَرِيضٌ ill
— I have لِي (See also lesson 11. B.)	illiterate أُمِّي
idle كَسَلَانٌ	— feminine : أُمِيَّةٌ

immediately فَوَاحًا and فِي الْوَحَالِ	is The copula "is" ("are") is omitted in the Arabic translation e.g.
important مُهِمٌ	— "he is big" : هُوَ كَبِيرٌ
in فِي	— "the children are in the garden" : الْوَلَدُ فِي الْبُسْتَانِ
— in front of قُدَّامَ and آتَمَ	it هُوَ
ink حَبْرٌ	— feminine : هِيَ
inspection تَفْقِيشٌ	— it in the objective case هُوَ (suffix)
inspector مُفَقِّشٌ	See lesson 17
iron حَدِيدٌ	— feminine : هَا (suffix)

J

Jaffa يَافَا	Jerusalem اَلْقُدْسُ
jar جَرَّةٌ	just as كَمَا

K

Key مِفْتَاحٌ	— plural : مفاتيحٌ
king مَلِكٌ	— plural : ملوكٌ
— plural : مطبخٌ	Kitchen مطبخٌ
— plural : معارفٌ	know عَرَفَ
— Imperfect : يعرفُ	know يَعْرِفُ

L

laboratory	مَعْمَلٌ	10 leave	تَرَكَ
— plural :	مَعْمَلَاتٌ	— imperfect :	يَتْرَكُ
labourer	عَامِلٌ	lesson	دَرْسٌ
— plural :	عَمَالٌ	— plural :	دُرُوسٌ
lady	سَيِّدَةٌ	life	حَيَاةٌ
— plural :	سَيِّدَاتٌ	light	خَفِيفٌ
lamb	خَرْوُوفٌ	— lighter	أَخْفٌ
— plural :	خَرْوَفَانٌ	line	خَطٌّ
lamp	قَنْدِيلٌ and مِصْبَاحٌ	— plural :	خَطُوطٌ
— plural :	قَنْدِيلَاتٌ and مِصْبَاحَاتٌ	lion	أَسَدٌ
language	لِسَانٌ and لُفَّةٌ	— plural :	أَسَدَاتٌ
large	وَاسِعٌ and كَبِيرٌ	load	سَحْنٌ and حِمْلٌ
10 laugh	صَحَّحَكَ	long	طَوِيلٌ
— imperfect :	يَصْحَحُكَ	— longer	أَطْوَلٌ
lazy	كَسَلَانٌ	loyal	أَمِينٌ ; مُخْلِصٌ
10 learn	دَرَسَ and تَعَلَّمَ	loyalty	أَمَانَةٌ ; إِخْلَاصٌ
— imperfect :	يَدْرُسُ and يَتَعَلَّمُ	lucky	سَعِيدٌ

M

mod	مَعْنُونٌ	million	مِلْيُونٌ
— plural :	مَعْنَانٌ	— plural :	مِلْيُونَاتٌ
man	رَجُلٌ	minister	وَزِيرٌ
— plural :	رِجَالٌ	— plural :	وُزَرَاءٌ
many	كَثِيرٌ	minute	دَقِيقَةٌ
— more	أَكْثَرٌ	— plural :	دَقَائِقٌ
marine	مَلَاحٌ	monday	يَوْمَ الْإِثْنَيْنِ
market	سُوقٌ	month	شَهْرٌ
— plural :	أَسْوَاقٌ	— plur.	شُهُورٌ ; أَشْهُرٌ
martyr	شَهِيدٌ	moon	قَمَرٌ
— plural :	شُهَدَاءٌ	more	أَكْثَرٌ
me	نِي (suffix)	morning	صَبَاحٌ
See lesson 17		Moslem	مُسْلِمٌ
meal	حَمْلٌ	— plural :	مُسْلِمُونَ
merchant	تَاجِرٌ	mosque	مَسْجِدٌ
— plural :	بُجَّارٌ	— plural :	مَسَاجِدٌ and جَوَامِعٌ
midday	الظَهْرُ	mother	وَالِدَةٌ and أُمٌ
milk	حَلِيبٌ		

to mount طَلَعَ — Imperfect: يَطْلَعُ	much كَثِيرٌ my (suffix) مَـي See lesson 8 and lesson 48. A. B.
name اسْمٌ This Alif is Hamzat-i-wasi — plural: أَسْمَاءٌ	— nineteen تِسْعَةَ عَشَرَ — feminine تِسْعَ عَشْرَةَ — ninety تِسْعُونَ — the nineleth التَّاسِعُونَ
narrow ضَيِّقٌ near قَرِيبٌ — nearer أَقْرَبُ	no لَا noon الظُّهْرُ — after-noon بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ — before-noon قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ north شِمَالٌ : شِمَالٌ
necessary لَازِمٌ neighbour جَارٌ — plural: جِيرَانٌ new جَدِيدٌ newspaper جَرِيدَةٌ — plural: جَرَائِدٌ	not مَا before the perfect form e. g. — before the Imperfect form e. g. — before the Imperfect form e. g. — before the Imperfect form e. g. — before the Imperfect form e. g.
— the ninth التَّاسِعُ	number عَدَدٌ

Particle of address يَا of مِنْ See also lesson 25 (1) b. officer ضَابِطٌ — plural: ضَبَاطٌ old قَدِيمٌ — age كِبِيرُ السِّنِّ — man شَيْخٌ See also page 136. Vocabulary on عَلَى once مَرَّةً — adverbial: مَرَّةً one وَاحِدٌ — feminine: وَاحِدَةٌ — one of أَحَدٌ See lesson 55 C. (1)	— feminine إِخْدَى to open فَتَحَ — Imperfect يَفْتَحُ or أَوْ the orient الْمَشْرِقُ orientalist مُتَشَقِّقٌ the other الْآخَرُ — feminine الْآخَرَى our أَنَا (suffix) See lesson 8 and lesson 48 A. B. ove: فَوْقَ , عَلَى ox بُخْرٌ — plural: بُخَرٌ and أَبْوَارٌ : بُخَرٌ
page صَفْحَةٌ — plural: صَفَحَاتٌ palace سَرَايٍ , قَصْرٌ the parents الْوَالِدَانِ	part جُزْءٌ and قِسْمٌ — plural: أَقْسَامٌ and أَجْزَالٌ partner شَرِيكَ — plural: شُرَكَاءٌ

partnership شِرْكَةٌ and شِرْكَةٌ

the past التَّاسِي

peasant see farmer

pest طَاعُونٌ

picture صُورَةٌ

— plural : صُورٌ

piece قِطْعَةٌ

— plural : قِطَعٌ

pilgrim حَاجٌّ

— pilgrimage حَجٌّ

pistol مِسْدَسٌ

to play لَعِبَ

— Imperfect : يَلْعَبُ

to plough حَرَثَ

— imperfect : يَحْرَثُ

poor فَقِيرٌ

— plural : فُقَرَاءٌ

— poorer أَفْقَرُ

possessor صَاحِبٌ

— plural : أَصْحَابٌ

post بَرِيدٌ

— post office دَائِرَةُ الْبَرِيدِ and

مَكْتَبُ الْبَرِيدِ

pretty جَمِيلٌ

pupil تَلِمِذٌ

— plural : تَلَامِيذٌ

to put وَضَعَ

— Imperfect : يَضَعُ

to read قَرَأَ

— Imperfect : يَقْرَأُ

red أَحْمَرٌ

— feminine خَمْزَةٌ

— plural خَمْزٌ

restaurant مَطْعَمٌ

— plural مَطَاعِمٌ

to return رَجَعَ

— Imperfect : يَرْجِعُ

rich غَنِيٌّ

— richer أَغْنَى

to ride رَكَبَ

— Imperfect : يَرْكَبُ

— Imperative ارْكَبْ

river نَهْرٌ

— plural أَنْهَارٌ

room غُرْفَةٌ

— plural غُرُفٌ

S

— Imperfect : يَقُولُ

school مَدْرَسَةٌ

— plural مَدَارِسٌ

sea بَحْرٌ

— plural بَحَارٌ and أَبْحُرُ

second (1/60 minute) ثَانِيَةٌ

— plural ثَوَانٍ

— the second (2nd) الثَّانِي

R

queen مَلِكَةٌ

question سُؤَالٌ

— plural : أَسْئَلَةٌ

Q

<p>time وَتٌةُ — plural : أَوَاقَتٌ tired تَعَبَانِ إِلَى to to-day الْيَوْمَ to-morrow غَدًا too اَيْضًا tooth سِنٌّ — plural : أَسْنَانٌ</p>	<p>tree شَجَرَةٌ tribe قَبِيلَةٌ — plural : قَبَائِلُ Tuesday اَلْاَلْأَثَاءُ twelve اِثْنَا عَشَرَ — feminine : اِثْنَا عَشْرَةَ twenty عِشْرُونَ twice مَرَّتَيْنِ two اِثْنَانِ — feminine : اِثْنَتَانِ — See also lesson 32</p>
U	U
<p>uncle عَمُّ (on the father's side) خالٌ (on the mother's side) under تَحْتَ to understand فَهِمَ</p>	<p>— imperfect : يَهْمُوْنَ until حَتَّى ؛ إِلَى أَنْ upon فَوْقَ ، عَلَى us نَا (suffix) See lesson 17</p>
V	V
<p>very جِدًّا vest صَدْرِيَّةٌ</p>	<p>village قَرْيَةٌ — plural : قُرًى</p>

- vineyard كَرْمٌ
- plural : كُرُومٌ
to visit زَارَ
- I visited زُرْتُ
- imperfect : يَزُورُ

W

- vocabulary قاموسٌ
- plural : قَوَامِيسُ
voice صَوْتٌ
- plural : أَصْوَاتٌ
volume مَجْلَدٌ

- war حَرْبٌ
- plural : حُرُوبٌ
watchman حَارِسٌ
water مَاءٌ
- plural : مِيَاهُ
way طَرِيقٌ
- plural : طُرُقٌ
we نَحْنُ

- we have لَنَا See also lesson 11 B.

Wednesday الْاَرْبَعَاءُ
يومٌ
week جُمُعَةٌ ؛ اسبوعٌ

- white أَبْيَضٌ
- fem. بَيْضَاءُ
- plural : بَيْضٌ
who ? مَنْ
why ? لِمَاذَا
wide وَاسِعٌ ؛ عَرِيفٌ
wife (consort) زَوْجَةٌ

- wind رِيحٌ
- plural : رِيَّاحٌ
window مُنْبَاكٌ
- plural : شَبَايِكٌ
wine خَمْرٌ
winter شِتَاءٌ

- year سَنَةٌ
- plural : سَنَوَاتٌ ؛ سِنُونٌ
yes نَعَمْ

Y

- wire سَلْكٌ
- plural : سَلَوَاتٌ ؛ سَلَاكٌ
- wireless لَا سِلْكِي
with بِ مَعَ
wolf ذِئْبٌ
- plural : ذِيَابٌ
woman امْرَأَةٌ
- plural : نِسَاءٌ
wonderful عَجِيبٌ
woodcutter حَطَّابٌ
wool صُوفٌ
to write كَتَبَ
- imperfect : يَكْتُبُ

- yesterday الْبَارِحَةَ ؛ الْبَارِحَ
أَنْتُمْ
you أَنْتُمْ - feminine : أَنْتِ
- you (masc) have لَكُمْ

— you (fem.) have also lesson 11 B. نَكُنْ (fem.) See	— Younger than صَغِيرٌ سِنًا مِنْ (fem.) See lesson 8 and lesson 48 A, B.
— you in oblique case كُنْ (suffix)	— your كُنْ (suffix) See lesson 8 and lesson 48 A, B.
— fem. كُنْ (suffix). See lesson 17	— feminine : كُنْ (suffix)
young صَغِيرُ السِّنِّ	

KEY

to the

Arabic Language and Grammar

VOLUME ONE

by

Dr. JOCHANAN KAPLIWATZKY

RUBIN MASS / JERUSALEM

Note 1: In this key a translation is given only of the

texts for the conversation-lessons in the book 'Arabic Language and Grammar'. The texts of the stories in the above book are composed of the matter in the preceding conversation-lessons and therefore no translation of it is necessary here.

Note 2: The English translation here of the Arabic

text in the book "Arabic Language and Grammar" is, as far as possible, a literal one, care being taken especially to the Arabic original in order to facilitate the understanding of the structure of the Arabic sentences for the English beginner. For the same reason the second person singular (thou, thee, thy) is used in the key as well as in the book.

Fifth Lesson

1. I have a house and thou (m.) hast a house
2. We have a large house
3. He has a big dog and she has a big dog
4. They (m.) have a fat dog and they (f.) have a fat dog
5. We have a large garden and they (m.) have a large vineyard
6. She has a vineyard and he has a garden
7. Thou (m.) hast a large garden and a large vineyard
8. A vineyard and a garden
9. A house and a vineyard
10. She has a big book and I have a big book
11. You (m.) have a book and they (m.) have a book
12. We have a fat ox and you (f.) have a fat ox
13. He has an ox and thou (m.) hast an ox and a dog.

1. أَنَا كَلْبٌ وَهُمْ كَلْبٌ 2. لَهُ بَيْتٌ كَبِيرٌ وَهِيَ

بَيْتَانِ كَبِيرٌ 3. لَهُمْ ثَوْرٌ سَمِينٌ وَكَأَبٌ سَمِينٌ 4. لَهُمْ

كُرْمٌ كَبِيرٌ وَهُمْ بَيْتٌ كَبِيرٌ 5. لَكَ كِتَابٌ وَلَنَا

كِتَابٌ 6. لَهَا كِتَابٌ كَبِيرٌ وَهِيَ كِتَابٌ كَبِيرٌ

7. لَهِنْ كَلْبٌ سَمِينٌ وَلِي ثَوْرٌ سَمِينٌ .

Seventh Lesson

1. I have a father and a mother and he has a father and a mother
2. A big door and a big window
3. We have a big door and they (m.) have a big window
4. She has a big and a fat cock and they (f.) have a big and a fat cock
5. You (m.) have a fat ox and a big dog
6. You (f.) have a house and a garden and she has a large vineyard
7. I and thou (m.)
8. Thou (m.) and he
9. He is big and fat and thou (m.) art big and fat
10. I have a big and fat elephant and he has a fat ox
11. She has a copy-book and a book and thou (f.) hast a copy-book and a book
12. An elephant and an ox. A house and a garden.

1. أَبٌ كَبِيرٌ وَبُيُوتٌ كَبِيرٌ 2. لَاحِي فِيلٌ سَمِينٌ

وَلَنَا ثَوْرٌ كَبِيرٌ وَسَمِينٌ 3. لِي دَفْطَرٌ وَكِتَابٌ وَلَهُ

كِتَابٌ ٤. لَهَا دِيكٌ سَمِينٌ ٥. لَنَا كَلْبٌ وَتَسْكُنُ
كَلْبٌ ٦. أَبٌ وَأُمٌّ ٧. أَنَا وَهُوَ. هُوَ وَأَنْتَ ٨. هُوَ
سَمِينٌ ٩. أَنْتَ سَمِينٌ وَكَبِيرٌ ١٠. لَكُمْ أَبٌ وَأُمٌّ
وَلَنَا أَبٌ وَأُمٌّ.

Ninth Lesson

1. I have a hare and thou (m.) hast a hare 2. Thy (m.) hare is bigger than my hare 3. He has a dog and I have a dog 4. His dog is fatter than my dog 5. Salim is a big boy 6. Shakir is a big pupil 7. Salim is bigger than my pupil 8. Shakir is bigger than my boy 9. Where is thy (m.) ox? — My ox is in my garden 10. Thy (m.) book is bigger than my book 11. Her vineyard is bigger than my vineyard 12. His ox is bigger and fatter than my ox 13. Thy (m.) ox and thy (m.) dog are in my garden 14. Where is thy (m.) pupil? — My pupil is in my vineyard 15. His house is bigger than my house 16. Where is my hare? — Thy (m.) hare is in my vineyard.

١. كَلْبُهُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ كَلْبِي ٢. أَيْنَ ثَوْرُكُمْ؟
ثَوْرُكُمْ فِي بُسْتَانِي ٣. دِيكُهَا أَكْبَرُ مِنْ دِيكِي ٤. أَرْنَاكِ
فِي بُسْتَانِي ٥. وَلَدُهُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ وَلَدِي ٦. أَيْنَ تَلْمِيذِي
وَتَلْمِيذُكَ؟ — تَلْمِيذِي وَتَلْمِيذُكَ فِي كَرْمِي ٧. لِي ثَوْرٌ
وَلَهَا ثَوْرٌ. ثَوْرُهَا أَكْبَرُ وَأَسْمَنُ مِنْ ثَوْرِي ٨. أَيْنَ
كَلْبُنَا؟ — كَلْبُكُمْ فِي بَيْتِي

Twelfth Lesson

1. What is this? — This is an ass 2. This is my ass 3. This is thy (m.) dog 4. My ass ate and thy (m.) ass did not eat 5. I ate and thou (m.) didst not eat 6. Who has written and who has drawn? — Salim has written and I have drawn 7. I have a brother and a sister and he has a brother and a sister 8. Shakir is bigger than my brother 9. I have a camel and thou (m.) hast a camel. Thy (m.) camel is bigger and fatter than my camel 10. Who went out of my garden? — My brother went out from there 11. Who has eaten in my garden? — My father has eaten there 12. My brother has written here and my sister has written there 13. My camel has eaten here and thy (m.) camel has eaten there 14. They (m.) have written and did not draw 15. They (f.) have drawn and did not write 16. We went out of my garden and you (m.) did not go out from there 17. They (m.) have drawn and you (f.) did not draw 18. We and you (m.). They (m.) and you (f.). I and they (f.). Thou (m.) and he. She and thou (f.) 19. We have written and did not draw. You (m.) have drawn and did not write. They (m.) have written and did not draw.

١. أَنَا أَكَلْتُ وَأَنْتَ مَا أَكَلْتَ ٢. هُمُ كَتَبُوا
وَحَنُ رَسَمْنَا ٣. أَنِي خَرَجَ مِنْ بُسْتَانِي ٤. أُمِّي خَرَجَتْ مِنْ
كَرْمِي ٥. نَحْنُ كَتَبْنَا وَهُوَ مَا كَتَبَ ٦. تَلْمِيذِي أَخ
وَأَخْتُ وَلَكَ أَخٌ وَجَلَّتْ أَكَلٌ وَجَارِي مَا أَكَلَ ٧. مَا
هَذَا؟ — هَذَا جَلٌّ وَ كَلْبُكُمْ أَكْبَرُ وَأَسْمَنُ مِنْ كَلْبِي
٨. أَكَلْنَا فِي بُسْتَانِي ٩. هُوَ أَكَلَ وَهِيَ مَا أَكَلَتْ
١٠. أَخْتِي كَتَبَتْ وَأَنْتَ مَا كَتَبْتَن ١١. أَخُوكُمْ
خَرَجَ مِنْ كَرْمِي ١٢. نَحْنُ أَكَلْنَا وَهِيَ مَا أَكَلَتْ.

Fourteenth Lesson

1. My vineyard is far and thy (m.) vineyard is near from here 2. His house is near from here and his garden is far from here 3. Who has read and who has written?—My sister has read and I have written 4. What did thy (m.) sister read?—My sister read my book 5. My dog is black and thy (m) dog is red 6. I have blue ink and thou (m.) hast black ink 7. My copy-book is heavy and thy (m.) copy-book is light 8. My brother has read my newspaper and my neighbour has written in my copy-book 9. They (f.) have read and they (m.) have written 10. We have written and you (m.) have read 11. My garden is far from here and thy (m.) garden is farther than it 12. My vineyard is near from here and his vineyard is farther than it 13. My ink is blue and thy (m.) ink is black 14. My cock is heavy and his cock is light 15. He has read my newspaper and she did not read.

1. أَخْلَتْ كَيْتَ وَأَنَا قَرَأْتُ 2. أَيْنَ جَارِكَ؟—هُوَ فِي كَرْمِي 3. جِبْرِهَا أَسْوَدَ وَجِدْرُهُ أَرْوَقُ 4. بَسْتَاهُنْ أَقْرَبُ مِنْ كَرْمِي 5. دِيكَاتُ أَثْقَلُ مِنْ دِيكِ 6. مَا قَرَأَ؟—هُوَ قَرَأَ جَرِيدَتِي 7. بَسِيْكُمْ أَقْرَبُ مِنْ بَيْتِي 8. مَنْ قَرَأَ وَمَنْ كَتَبَ؟—أَنَا كَتَبْتُ وَجَارِي قَرَأَ 9. نَحْنُ قَرَأْنَا وَهُمْ مَا قَرَأُوا 10. هِيَ كَتَبَتْ وَأَخْبَاهَا مَا كَتَبَتْ 11. هِيَ أَكَلَتْ وَهُوَ مَا أَكَلَ 12. بَيْتُهُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ بَيْتِي 13. دَفْتَرُهُ أَثْقَلُ مِنْ دَفْتَرِي 14. أَيْنَ كَلْبُكُمْ؟—كَلْبِي فِي بَسْتَانِي

Fifteenth Lesson

1. Who has drunk and who has eaten?—My brother has drunk and I have eaten 2. They (m.) ate and did not drink and they (f.) drank and did not eat 3. My hare has drunk and thy (f.) hare has not drunk 4. His hare is fatter than my hare 5. My brother entered my vineyard and thy (m.) neighbour went out of it 6. I have a fat lamb and she has a fat lamb 7. His lamb is big and my lamb is bigger (than it) 8. Thou (m.) art bigger than my brother and I am bigger than thee (m.) 9. Thy (f.) pupil is big and her pupil is bigger (than he) 10. Who went out of my garden?—My grand-father went out of it 11. My grand-mother entered my garden and went out of it 12. Where is thy (m.) grand-father and thy grand-mother?—My grand-father and my grand-mother are in my vineyard 13. My father and my grand-mother are in my garden and my mother and grand-mother are in my vineyard.

1. جَلَدَ كَيْتَ وَأَنَا قَرَأْتُ 2. خَرُوفُكُمْ أَسْمَنُ مِنْ خَرُوفِي 3. أَيْنَ أُمِّسَا؟—أُمُّكَ فِي كَرْمِي 4. تَلْمِيذُكَ كَبِيرٌ وَتَلْمِيذِي أَكْبَرُ مِنْهُ 5. جَدُّهُ دَخَلَتْ بَسْتَانِي 6. جَمَلِي شَرَبَ وَجَمَلُهَا مَا شَرَبَ 7. هُمُ شَرَبُوا وَنَحْنُ مَا شَرَبْنَا 8. هُوَ خَرَجَ مِنْ بَيْتِي 9. بَيْتِي أَقْرَبُ مِنْ بَيْتِهِ 10. أُخْتِي شَرَبَتْ وَأَخْبَاهُ مَا شَرَبَتْ 11. فَيْلُهَا أَكْبَرُ مِنْ فَيْلِي

Fifteenth Lesson

1. Where did Ibrahim find my horse?—He found it in my garden 2. Where did Ahmad find my cow?—He found it in my vineyard 3. Who has beaten my brother?—Thy (m.) neighbour has beaten him 4. Who found you (m.) in my garden?—Thy (m.) neighbour found us there 5. Who

has beaten you (m) ? - Thy (m) neighbour has beaten us
6. Who has eaten my bread ? - We have eaten it 7. Who
has drunk my milk ? - We have drunk it. 8. Who has beaten
thee (m) ? - Thy (m) neighbour has beaten me 9. Who has
broken my cup ? - Thy (m) sister has broken it 10. Who has
beaten my ass ? - Thy (m) pupil has beaten it 11. My brother
did not break my cup. My sister has broken it 12. My sister
has drunk my milk and my brother did not drink it 13. Who
has beaten my camel ? - Ahmad has beaten it 14. Your (m)
horse is bigger and fatter than my horse 15. I have black
ink and he has green ink 16. She has a black dog and you
(m) have a white dog 17. I have a horse and an ass and
you (m) have an ox and a camel 18. Thy (m) cup is bigger
than my cup.

1. مَنْ وَجَدَ كِتَابِي؟ - أَخِي وَجَدَهُ 2. مَنْ
صَرَبَ تَلْمِذِي؟ - جَارُنَا صَرَبَهُ 3. مَنْ كَسَرَ فَنَجَانِي؟
أَخِي 4. جِيرُ كُنْ أَسْوَدُ وَجِيرُ مَنَا أَرْقُ
5. جِيرُهَا أَخْضَرُ وَجِيرُهُ أَحْمَرُ 6. إِبْرَاهِيمُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ
أَخِي 7. أَحْمَدُ كَسَرَ فَنَجَانِي 8. لِي حِمَارٌ وَلَهَا حِمَارٌ
جَارُهَا أَسْمَنُ مِنْ جَارِي 9. حَصَانُهُ كَبِيرٌ وَحَصَانُكَ
أَكْبَرُ مِنْهُ 11. كَلْبُكُمْ أَسْوَدُ وَ كَلْبُهُنَّ أَبْيَضُ
13. أَيْنَ وَجَدَ فَنَجَانِي؟
14. (نَحْنُ) وَجَدْنَاهَا. (هِيَ)
وَجَدْنَاهُ. (أَنَا) وَجَدْنَاهَا. (أَنْتَ) وَجَدْتَنِي.

Twentieth Lesson

1. Who will write and who will draw ? - My mother will write
and my sister will draw 2. They (m) have written and you (m)
did not write. 3. They (m) will write (write) and you (m) will not
write (do not write). 4. They (f) have drunk and you (f) did not
drink 5. They (f) will drink (drink) and you (f) will (do) not
drink 6. My cow drinks now and thy (m) cow does not drink
7. Where does Fatima write ? - She writes in my copy-book
8. Salih has now written and I did not write 9. Where didst
thou (m) leave my ox ? - I left it in my garden 10. Shakir
left my book in my school 11. Who has opened my book ?
- My pupil has opened it 12. I have a table and a chair and
thou (m) hast a table and a bench 13. Thy (m) table is
bigger than my table 14. Where is my brother Ahmad ? -
He is in my school 15. My sister Fatima is bigger than I and
I am bigger than thee (f) 18. Who opened my book ? -
I did not open it. Thy (m) pupil Shakir opened it 19. She
will go (goes) out and thou (f) will not (do not) go out
20. Thou (m) will draw and he will not draw 21. Ibrahim
writes and Fatima does not write 22. You (m) went out of
my garden and they (m) do (will) not go out of it.

1. أَخُوكَ كَتَبَ وَنَحْنُ مَا كَتَبْنَا 2. نَحْنُ نَكْتُبُ
وَأَنْتُمْ لَا تَكْتُبُونَ 3. مَائِدَتُكَ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ مَائِدَتِي
4. لِي كُرْسِيٌّ وَبَنَّاكَ وَلَهَا مَائِدَةٌ وَكُرْسِيٌّ 5. أَيْنَ
كَتَبَ سَلِيمٌ؟ - هُوَ كَتَبَ فِي كُرْسِيِّ 6. تَوْرَهُ
أَسْوَدُ وَتَوْرَتُهَا أَبْيَضُ 7. تَلْمِذُكُمْ كَسَرَ كُرْسِيَّ
8. حِمَالَتُكَ أَكْبَرُ وَأَسْمَنُ مِنْ حِمَالَتِي 9. أَيْنَ أَخُوهُ؟
- هُوَ فِي مَدْرَسَتِي 10. هُمُ يَكْتُبُونَ وَهُوَ لَا يَكْتُبُ
11. أَخَذْنَا شَرَبَتَ وَأَخَذْنَاكَ مَا شَرَبْتَ 12. أَيْنَ خَرُوفُهُ؟
- خَرُوفُهُ فِي بُسْتَانِي 13. أَنَا كَتَبْتُ وَجَدْتَنِي مَا كَتَبْتَ

14. بَيْتُكَ أَقْرَبُ مِنْ بَيْتِي 15. لَنَا تَوْرٌ وَحِمَارٌ وَلَهُ
جَمَلٌ وَبَيْرَةٌ 16. لَهَا أُخْتُ وَلِي أُخْتُ وَأَخٌ.

Twenty-second Lesson

1. Where art thou (m.) going, my brother?— I am going (I go, or I shall go) to my school 2. Where is thy (m.) book?—My book is on my table 3. My sister went out of my room and my brother did not go out from there 4. My brother returned from Jaffa and my father will return to-morrow from there 5. My teacher went with my grand-father to my school 6. Who went out with thee (m.) from my room?—Thy (m.) teacher went out with me from there 7. I have a big dog and thou (m.) hast a small dog. Thy (m.) dog is smaller than my dog (m.) 8. My brother is smaller than I and I am smaller than thou (m.) 9. My neighbour is very poor and thy (m.) neighbour is very rich 10. Thy (m.) camel is smaller than my camel and thy (m.) ass is bigger than my ass 11. Ahmad is very poor and Shalim is poorer than he 12. Ibrahim is very rich and Shakir is richer than he.

1. أَيْنَ جَرِيدَتِي؟— جَرِيدَتُكَ عَلَى مَائِدَتِي 2. حَصَانُهُ
أَصَمٌّ مِنْ حَصَانِي 3. تَوْرُهَا كَبِيرٌ جَدًّا 4. ابْنُهِ
أَغْنَى مِنْ جَارِي 5. جَارُهُ غَنِيٌّ وَجَارُنَا فَقِيرٌ 6. يَا سَلِيمُ
أَيْنَ كِتَابِي؟— كِتَابُكَ فِي عُرْفَتِي 7. بُسْتَانُكُمْ أَصْغَرُ
مِنْ بُسْتَانِي 8. أَنْتَ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ
أَخِي 9. أَيْنَ جَدِيدِي؟— هُوَ فِي عُرْفَتِي 10. جَدُّكُمْ
أَغْنَى مِنْ جَدِيدِي.

Twenty-fourth Lesson

1. This camel is small. It is smaller than my camel 2. This ass is cheap and that ass is cheaper than it 3. That tailor is poor. He is poorer than my neighbour 4. Who was in my room to-day?— Zayd was there and the baker too was there 5. The barber was in Jaffa to-day and the blacksmith also was there. 6. Thy (m.) sister was in my garden and Fatima also was there 7. My mother was in Jaffa to-day and my sister also was there 8. Where is the new book?— The new book is on my table in my room 9. When did Zayd return from Jaffa and when did the barber return?— Zayd returned from Jaffa to-day and the barber also returned to-day 10. What is this?— This is a dog 11. This dog is bigger and fatter than my dog 12. This new house is larger than my house and that house is smaller than it 13. This elephant is big and that elephant is bigger than it 14. When didst thou (m.) return from Jaffa?— I returned from there to-day 15. Thy (m.) grand-father was in my vineyard and in my garden to-day 16. Where is the big dog and where is the ass?— The big dog is in my garden and the ass also is in my garden.

1. كِتَابُكَ ارْخَصُ مِنْ كِتَابِي 2. هَذَا الْجَمَلُ
كَبِيرٌ وَذَلِكَ الْجَمَلُ صَغِيرٌ 3. هَذَا الْخَيْطُ غَنِيٌّ
وَذَلِكَ الْخَيْطُ فَقِيرٌ 4. الْخُلَاقُ كَانَ فِي يَافَا وَالْحَدَّادُ
أَيْضًا كَانَ هُنَاكَ 5. هَذَا الْبَيْتُ الْجَدِيدُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ
بَيْتِي 6. ذَلِكَ الْكِتَابُ الْجَدِيدُ ارْخَصُ مِنْ كِتَابِي
الْجَدِيدِ 7. مَتَى رَجَعْتَ مِنْ يَافَا؟— أَنَا رَجَعْتُ الْيَوْمَ
مِنْ هُنَاكَ 8. أَيْنَ الْخَيْطُ؟— هُوَ فِي عُرْفَتِي 9. هَذَا
الْكَلْبُ أَكْبَرُ وَأَسْمَنُ مِنْ كُلِّي 10. بُسْتَانُ كَبِيرٌ.
أَيْسَرُ الْبُسْتَانِ الْكَبِيرِ. هَذَا الْبُسْتَانُ الْكَبِيرُ. هَذَا الْبُسْتَانُ

كَبِير. ذَلِكَ الْبُسْتَانُ. ذَلِكَ الْبُسْتَانُ الْكَبِيرُ.
 ذَلِكَ الْبُسْتَانُ كَبِيرٌ.

Twenty-sixth Lesson

1. Who opened the big door? — I opened it.
2. What hast thou (m.) eaten to-day? — I have eaten bread and meat to-day.
3. The dog of the neighbour is fatter than the dog of the barber.
4. Where is the book of the director of the school? — His book is on the table in the room of the grand-father.
5. The grand-father of the neighbour was in the vineyard of my brother to-day.
6. The neighbour of the tailor is poor. He is poorer than the neighbour of the blacksmith.
7. Who visited thee (m.) in the school to-day? — The teacher of Muhammad visited me there.
8. What is thy (m.) name and what is the name of thy (m.) sister? — My name is Isma'il and the name of my sister is Fatima.
9. Thy (m.) sister visited the sister of the teacher to-day.
10. Where is the son of the blacksmith? — His son is in the house of the baker.
11. Where is the dog of the uncle (on the mother's side)? — The dog of the uncle is under the table.
12. The house of the aunt (on the mother's side) and her vineyard.
13. My uncle (on the father's side) has visited thy (m.) uncle in the new house to-day.
14. My aunt (on the father's side) was in the vineyard of my grand-mother to-day.
15. The big son of the teacher was in Jaffa to-day.
16. Who drank the milk? — I did not drink it. My brother Ibrahim drank it.
17. My uncle (on the mother's side) visited the uncle of the neighbour in Jaffa.
18. What is the name of the uncle (on the mother's side)? — The name of the uncle is Isma'il.
19. The name of my brother is Ibrahim and the name of my sister is Hind.
20. This new house is larger than my house.

1. هَذَا الْكَلْبُ كَبِيرٌ. هُوَ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ ذَلِكَ الْكَلْبِ.
 2. لِي حِمَارٌ وَاهٌ وَحَصَانٌ وَالْحَصَانُ أَكْبَرُ مِنَ الْحِمَارِ.
 وَالْجَمَلُ أَكْبَرُ مِنَ الْحَصَانِ. 4. أَيْنَ مُدِيرُ الْمَدْرَسَةِ؟ —
 هُوَ فِي عُرْفَةِ الْحَيَّةِ. 5. مَا اسْمُكَ؟ — اِسْمِي سُلَيْمَانُ.

6. أَكَلْتُ خُبْزًا وَلَحْمًا وَهِيَ شَرِبَتْ حَلِيبًا. 7. هَذَا الْجَمَلُ أَكْبَرُ وَأَسْمَنُ مِنْ ذَلِكَ الْجَمَلِ. 8. الْخِلَافُ أَفْقَرُ مِنَ الْخِدَادِ. 9. الْمُعَلِّمُ فِي عُرْفَةِ الْمُدِيرِ.
 10. الْخِدَادُ فِي الْبَيْتِ الْجَدِيدِ. 11. هَذَا الْفِيلُ كَبِيرٌ.
 هُوَ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ فِيلِي. 12. أَيْنَ الْحَيَّاطُ؟ — هُوَ فِي بَيْتِ الْخَبَّازِ. 13. أَيْنَ الْكُتَّابُ الْجَدِيدُ؟ — الْكُتَّابُ الْجَدِيدُ عَلَى الْمَائِدَةِ.

Twenty-seventh Lesson

1. The hare is a small animal.
2. My brother was in the park of the animals (zoo) to-day and my father will be there to-morrow.
3. What has thy (m.) brother seen in the zoo? — My brother has seen there a big lion in a big cage.
4. Hast thou (m.) written to-day? — Yes, I have written to-day.
5. Hast thou (m.) opened the gate of the vineyard? — No, I have not opened it.
6. Will thy (m.) brother be at school to-morrow? — Yes, he will be there to-morrow.
7. What didst thou (m.) ask the baker and what did he answer? — I asked him when he was in the house of the uncle (on the mother's side) and he answered that he was there to-day.
8. I have a friend and his name is Salim.
9. My father rode in a boat on sea and thy (m.) father will ride in a boat to-morrow.
10. My brother rode an ass and thy (m.) brother rode a horse.
11. The mariner died in the house of my friend.
12. Who saw the brother of the mariner? — The father of my friend saw the brother of the mariner.
13. My grand-father visited the father of the teacher in Jaffa.
14. The name of the father of the teacher is Tawfiq and the name of the brother of the director is Zayd.
15. أَيْنَ أَخُو الْمُدِيرِ؟ — هُوَ فِي هَذَا الْبُسْتَانِ. 2. أَنَا فَتَحْتُ بَابَ الْعُرْفَةِ. 3. أَيْنَ صَدِيقِي؟ — صَدِيقُكَ فِي

عُرِفَ الْجِدُّ ٤ أَبُومُ كَانَ الْيَوْمَ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ وَ أَبُوهَا
رَكِبَ حِمَارًا وَأَخُوهَا رَكِبَ حَصَانًا ٦. خَالِي زَارَ أَبَا
الْمُعَلِّمِ ٧ مَنْ رَأَى أَنَا الْخَيْطَاطَ؟ ٨ أَخُو الْخَدَّادِ
رَأَى أَنَا الْخَيْطَاطَ ٨ الْأَسَدُ الْكَبِيرُ فِي قَفْصٍ كَبِيرٍ
٩. هَلْ كَتَبَ الْيَوْمَ؟ نَعَمْ هُوَ كَتَبَ ١٠. أَفْتَحَ
بَابَ الْمُرَفَّةِ؟ نَعَمْ هُوَ فَتَحَهُ

Twenty-ninth Lesson

1. This copy-book is big and that copy-book is small
2. This fox is bigger than my fox 3. Who opened the small
window?— I opened the small window 4. Where dost thou
(m.) go, my uncle?— I go to the new shop 5. My sister was
in the new market 6. I went to the market in the morning and
returned from there in the evening 7. The father of Salim was
at school in the forenoon 8. What hast thou (m.) drunk in the
forenoon and what hast thou (m.) drunk in the after-noon?— In
the forenoon I drank a cup of milk and in the after-noon I drank
a cup of coffee 9. This pupil is bigger than the pupil of my
brother 10. Where is the fat ox?—The fat ox is in the garden
of the carpenter 11. Shakir saw a pretty bird on the tree 12. My
brother drank a cup of coffee and my uncle (on the father's side)
drank milk 13. Where is the bird of Muhammad?— His bird
is in a small cage 14. I have a fox and a hare and thou (m.)
hast a dog and a lamb 15. Where is the little bird?— The
little bird is on the tree 16. Where is the new chair?— The
new chair is under the tree.

١. شَرِبْتُ فَيْحَانٌ قَهْوَةً وَأَخِي شَرِبَتْ حَلِيبًا
٢. أَخِي كَانَ فِي الدَّكَانِ الْجَدِيدِ ٣. جَدِّي كَانَ فِي
الْمَدْرَسَةِ وَرَجَعَ مِنْ هُنَاكَ بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ ٤. اخْتَارَ

كَانَتْ فِي السُّوقِ صَبَاحًا ٥. أَيْنَ الْمُصْغُورِ الصَّغِيرِ؟
هُوَ عَلَى الشَّجَرَةِ فِي الْبُسْتَانِ ٦. لِي ثَعْلَبٌ وَلَهُ ثَعْلَبٌ
٧. هَذَا الثَّعْلَبُ اسْمُهُ مِنْ ذَلِكَ الثَّعْلَبِ ٨. هَذَا
التَّوْرُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ ذَلِكَ التَّوْرِ ٩. أَيْنَ تَلْمِذِكُمْ؟
هُوَ فِي عُرْفَةِ الْجِدِّ ١٠. أَيْنَ بَيْتِ الْخَيْطَاطِ؟ بَيْتُ
الْخَيْطَاطِ فِي السُّوقِ ١١. أَيْنَ النَّجَّارِ؟ النَّجَّارُ فِي
بُسْتَانِ الْخُبَّازِ ١٢. هَذَا النَّجَّارُ أَفْرَ مِنْ ذَلِكَ النَّجَّارِ
١٣. هَذَا الْمُصْغُورُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ ذَلِكَ الْمُصْغُورِ ١٤. أَخِي
كَانَ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ صَبَاحًا وَأَخِي كَانَتْ هُنَاكَ بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ

Thirty-first Lesson

1. When did thy (m.) brother mount the mount and when did
he descend from it?— My brother mounted the mount in the fore-
noon 2. What did thy (m.) brother eat and what did thy (m.)
sister eat?— My brother ate bread and a piece of meat and
my sister ate bread and a piece of cheese 3. Where is the
(she-)cat of my aunt (on the mother's side)?—It is in the little room
4. My grand-mother has a (she-)cat and an ape. The ape is
bigger than the (she-)cat. 5. This hand is clean and that hand
is dirty 6. This foot is clean and that foot is dirty 7. Who
has taken the newspaper of the teacher?— I do not know who
has taken it 8. Dost thou (m.) know the brother of Salim?— No,
I do not know him 9. Who raised this newspaper from
the earth?— I raised it 10. My brother found a nut on the
earth and raised it 11. Salim raised this nut from the earth
12. Where is the newspaper of my brother?— Ibrahim took it and
put it on the big table 13. Where is my little brother?— He
is in the forest 14. Thy (m.) brother plays with my brother in
the forest 15. Ahmad played with my brother in the forest.

1. هَذِهِ الْمُدْرَسَةُ صَغِيرَةٌ وَتِلْكَ الْمُدْرَسَةُ كَبِيرَةٌ
2. أَيْنَ هَرَّةُ الْأَخْتِ؟ - هَرَّتُهَا فِي تِلْكَ الْغُرْفَةِ. 3. هَذِهِ الْغُرْفَةُ كَبِيرَةٌ وَتِلْكَ الْغُرْفَةُ صَغِيرَةٌ 4. هَلْ يَعْرِفُ أَخُوكَ أَيْنَ مُدِيرُ هَذِهِ الْمُدْرَسَةِ؟ - لَا هُوَ لَا يَعْرِفُ أَيْنَ هُوَ 5. هَذِهِ الرَّجُلُ نَظِيفٌ وَتِلْكَ الرَّجُلُ وَسِخٌ 6. غُرْفَةُ الْأَخْتِ نَظِيفَةٌ وَغُرْفَةُ الْأَخِ وَسِخٌ 7. هَذِهِ الْبَقْرَةُ سَمِينَةٌ 8. ذَلِكَ الْكَلْبُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ هَذَا الْكَلْبِ وَتِلْكَ الْبَقْرَةُ كَبِيرَةٌ وَهَذِهِ الْبَقْرَةُ صَغِيرَةٌ 10. مَنْ كَانَ فِي هَذِهِ الْغُرْفَةِ وَمَنْ كَانَ فِي تِلْكَ الْغُرْفَةِ؟ - أَخُوكَ كَانَ فِي هَذِهِ الْغُرْفَةِ وَأَخُوهُ كَانَ فِي تِلْكَ الْغُرْفَةِ

Thirty-third Lesson

1. I have two big oxen and thou (m.) hast two big cows
2. The two dogs of my brother are big and the two dogs of my grand-father are small
3. Thy (m.) two cows are small and his two cows are big
4. My brother divided the piece of the cheese in two parts. He ate the one (in Arabic: the first) part and my sister ate the other part
5. I bought two cows to-day, one cow before noon and one cow in the after-noon. The one (first) cow is small and the other is big
6. This tailor is old. He is older than that tailor
7. These two dogs are small and those two cows are big
8. The bread which thou (m.) hast bought in the new market is cheaper than the bread which I have bought in the shop
9. Who has split the nut which was on the table in my room and who has eaten its core? - Salim

10. These two vineyards are bigger than the two vineyards of my brother
11. These two newspapers are bigger than the two newspapers of Zayd
12. These two asses are smaller than thy (m.) two asses
13. We have two vineyards and you (m.) have two houses.

Thirty-fourth Lesson

1. Ibrahim divided the piece of the meat into two parts. Then he put each of the two parts in a scale of the balance
2. The balance of my brother is bigger than the balance of thy (m.) grand-father
3. What hast thou (m.) done with the sugar which I have bought in the new market? - I first divided it into two parts then I put each of the two parts on the table in my room
4. My brother has two oxen and I have two fat cows
5. Thy (m.) father said to thy (m.) brother: draw for me two automobiles and thy (m.) brother drew then two automobiles
6. My brother and my sister went to school in the forenoon and returned from there in the after-noon
7. Where is my sister and thy (m.) sister? - They (dual) went to school
8. From where did I and my brother return? - You (dual) have returned from school
9. This book is cheap and that book is a little cheaper than it
10. I drank a little from the milk and ate a little from the bread and my brother ate and drank more than I
11. The two new houses of my brother are much larger than the two houses of Salim
12. The two sisters of Salim have much written and read to-day
13. I have not gone to school to-day because my father is ill
14. My brother has not gone to school to-day because he is ill
15. What hast thou (m.) eaten in the forenoon? - I ate bread and a piece of meat.

1. كَلْبَا أَخِي فِي بُسْتَانِ أَخْنَتِكَ 2. الْأَرْدَنَانِ الْكَبِيرَانِ فِي كَرَمِ الْعَمِّ 3. لِي بَيْتَانِ وَلِأَيِّهِمَا بَيْتَانِ. بَيْتَاهُ فِي السُّوقِ الْجَدِيدِ 4. بَقَرَتَا جَدَّتِي أَسْنَنُ مِنْ بَقَرَتِي الْخَطِيطِ 5. أَيْنَ جَرِيدَتَا الْمُدِيرِ؟ - هُمَا عَلَى الْمَائِدَةِ فِي غُرْفَةِ الْأَبِ 6. بَيْتُ الْخُبَّازِ وَبُسْتَانُهُ

7. ثَوْرَاهَا أَكْبَرُ مِنْ ثَوْرَيْهِ 8. كَلَبَا الْخَيْطِ وَأَرْبَابَهُ
9. حِمَارًا خَالِيًا وَجَمَلًاهَا 10. لَهُ حِمَارٌ وَاحِدٌ وَثَوْرَانِ
وَلَنَا حِمَارَانِ وَثَوْرٌ وَاحِدٌ

Thirty-sixth Lesson

1. أَخِي وَقَفَ بَيْنَ الْجَبَدِ وَالْأُخْتِ 2. مَا سَمِعَ
فِي غُرْفَةِ الْكَلْبِ؟ 3. هُوَ سَمِعَ هُنَاكَ أَنْكَ مَرِيضٌ
3. أَخِي أَخَذَتْ اللَّحْمَ وَقَسَمَتْهُ إِلَى قِسْمَيْنِ 4. أَيْنَ
الْكِتَابُ الْجَدِيدُ الَّذِي اشْتَرَيْتَهُ فِي الدُّكَّانِ
الْجَدِيدِ؟ 5. اخُذْكَ وَضَعْتُهُ عَلَى الْمَائِدَةِ الْجَدِيدَةِ
6. يَقْرَأُكَ أَسْمَنُ مِنْ يَقْرَأُ جَدَّتِي 6. بَيْتَاهُ أَقْرَبُ
مِنْ بَيْتِكَ 7. لِي كِتَابَانِ جَدِيدَانِ وَلَهُ أَيْضًا كِتَابَانِ
جَدِيدَانِ 8. أَيْنَ الْحِمَارَانِ؟ هُمَا فِي الْبُسْتَانِ 9. أَيْنَ
بَيْتِ الْخَيْطِ الْجَدِيدَيْنِ؟ هُمَا فِي السُّوقِ الْجَدِيدِ
10. لَنَا ثَوْرَانِ وَلَهَا أَيْضًا ثَوْرَانِ 11. حِمَارَايَ أَكْبَرُ
مِنْ حِمَارِي أَخِي 12. مَتَى زَارَ مُعَلِّمُكَ خَالَتَا؟ هُوَ
زَارَهُ بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ 13. جَدَّتُهَا زَارَتْ الْيَوْمَ أُمَّ الْمُعَلِّمِ
14. أَيْنَ تَعَلَّمْتَ اللُّغَةَ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ؟ تَعَلَّمْتُهَا فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ

Thirty-eighth Lesson

1. The Moslems do not drink wine and do not eat pork
2. The teachers and the lady-teachers of my school (in Arabic, the teachers of my school and its lady-teachers) have visited in the afternoon the mosque which is in the quarter of the blacksmiths
3. Where did thy (m) brother learn the Arabic language?—My brother learned the Arabic language in the school which is in the Jaffa street 4. Hast thou (m) learned the English language at school?—Yes I have learned it there 5. What are the four directions?—The four directions are: East, West, North and South
6. What hast thou (m) learned at school to-day?—I have learned the four directions to-day 7. Thy teachers have visited the teachers of my brother in the school 8. Where is the little brother of the neighbour?—He is now playing in front of the garden and is shouting in a loud voice 9. Who shouted in front of the house in the forenoon?—The little brother of the neighbour played and shouted in front of the house
10. These teachers have been to-day in the forest and those teachers have been to-day in Jaffa 11. My brother learned the Arabic and the English languages at school. 12. Where is thy (m) dog now?—it is now in the room of grand-mother 13. The teachers and the lady-teachers have been in Jerusalem to-day.
14. Where are the lady-teachers of this school?—They (f) are in the vineyard of my grand-mother.

1. إِنِّي كَانُ الْيَوْمَ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ الَّتِي فِي شَارِعِ
يَافَا 2. عَمَّذَا كَانَ الْيَوْمَ فِي الْقُدْسِ وَمُعَلِّمِي أَيْضًا
كَانَ هُنَاكَ 3. أَيْنَ أَخِي الصَّغِيرُ الْآتَنَ؟ هِيَ تَلْعَبُ
أَمَامَ الْجَسَامِيعِ 4. هَذَا الشَّارِعُ أَطْوَلُ مِنْ ذَلِكَ
الشَّارِعِ 5. الْخُيَّارُونَ كَانُوا الْيَوْمَ فِي بُسْتَانِ الْجَدِ
6. مَنْ رَأَى الْخُيَّاطِينَ الْيَوْمَ؟ أَنَا رَأَيْتُ الْخُيَّاطِينَ
بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ 7. مُعَلِّمُوا هَذِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ كَانُوا الْيَوْمَ

8. تَعَلَّمْتُ اللَّهُمَّ الْإِنْجِلِيزِيَّةَ فِي هَذِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ وَأَيْنَ تَعَلَّمَ ابْنُكَ اللُّغَةَ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ؟ - هُوَ تَعَلَّمَ اللَّهُمَّ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ فِي يَافَا 10. مُدِيرُ هَذِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ وَمُعَلِّمُهَا رَجَعُوا الْيَوْمَ مِنَ الْقُدْسِ

Lesson 42

1. Where are the newspapers which I have bought in the forenoon? - They are on my table 2. Where hast thou (m.) bought these new copy-books? - I have bought them in the new shop 3. Take this chalk and draw a man on the blackboard 4. The blackboard is black and the chalk is white 5. One ship of the ships which I saw in the morning has sunk in the afternoon 6. The bear is bigger than the wolf and the elephant is bigger than the bear 7. I have seen to-day the pupils of this school in the forest which is near Jaffa 8. When didst thou (m.) buy these books? - I bought them last year 9. For how much (money) did the farmer sell the fox and for how much (money) did he buy the ass? - The farmer sold the fox for one Palestinian pound and bought the ass for two Palestinian pounds 10. This merchant and his partner opened a new shop in the new market 11. The partners of this company are richer than the partners of that company 12. These hares are bigger than those hares 13. The houses in this street are bigger than the houses (that are) in that street 14. I have seen to-day the pupils of this school in the large forest which is near Haifa.

Lesson 43

1. The farmer have sown to-day turnip in the garden 2. The landlord has been to-day in the village and has bought there for one Palestinian pound straw from the farmers 3. These pupils are diligent and those (pupils) are lazy 4. These schools are larger than those (schools) 5. Where didst thou (m.) leave the dogs of my grand-father? - I left them in the vineyard 6. These houses are larger than the houses in that street 7. When hast thou (m.) bought these cocks? - I bought them yesterday 8. What has Ibrahim drawn in the new copy-book? - He has drawn there straight lines 9. This line is longer than all the other lines 10. The sons of the neighbour are lazy and his daughters are diligent 11. The daughters of my brother have learned in this school and his sons have learned in the school which is in the old city 12. The farmers who went out from the mosque went to Jaffa

13 From where did the pupils who have now entered the school return? - They returned from the forest 14. What has the director of the school given to the pupils? - He has given them new book 15. These copy-books are dear. They are dearer than those copy-books 16. The sugar which I have bought in this shop is dearer than the sugar which I have bought in the market.

1. هُوَذَا أَتَلَامِيذُكَ الْفَلَاحِيْنَ 2. أَيْنَ اشْتَرَيْتُمْ هَذِهِ الْكُتُبَ الْجَدِيدَةَ؟ - أَنَا اشْتَرَيْتُهَا فِي الدُّكَّانِ الْجَدِيدِ 3. هُوَذَا التَّلَامِيذُ كَسَلَانُونَ وَأُولَاؤِكَ التَّلَامِيذُ مُجْتَهِدُونَ 4. صَاحِبُ هَذِهِ الْبُيُوتِ غَنِيٌّ. هُوَ اغْنَى مِنْ صَاحِبِ تِلْكَ الْبُيُوتِ 5. أَيْنَ كَلَّابُ الْجَدِّ؟ - هِيَ فِي بَشْتَانِ الْجَارِ 6. تَلَامِيذُ هَذِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ كَانُوا الْيَوْمَ فِي الْغَابَةِ وَتَلَامِيذُ تِلْكَ الْمَدْرَسَةِ كَانُوا هُنَاكَ الْبَارِحَ 7. الْبَيْتُ الْجَدِيدُ أَكْبَرُ مِنَ الْبَيْتِ الْقَدِيمِ 8. اخْنِي بَاعَ بَيْتَهُ الْقَدِيمَ وَاشْتَرَى بَيْتًا جَدِيدًا 9. رَأَيْتُ الْبَارِحَ دُبًا كَبِيرًا فِي قَفْصٍ 10. الْمَدَارِسُ فِي هَذِهِ الْقَرْيَةِ صَغِيرَةٌ. هِيَ أَصْعَرُ مِنَ الْمَدَارِسِ فِي تِلْكَ الْقَرْيَةِ 11. هَذِهِ الدَّفَافِرُ أَرْحَصُ مِنْ تِلْكَ الدَّفَافِرِ 12. هَذِهِ الْبُيُوتُ الْجَدِيدَةُ أَصْعَرُ مِنْ تِلْكَ الْبُيُوتِ الْقَدِيمَةِ 13. هُوَذَا الْخُبَّازُونَ أَغْنِيَاءُ. هُمْ اغْنَى مِنْ أُولَاؤِكَ الْخُبَّازِينَ.

Lesson 46

1. What is there on the table? — On the table there are books, copy-books and newspapers
2. We have drunk coffee in big cups and they (m.) have drunk coffee in small cups
3. What didst thou (m.) buy in the new shop? — I bought there newspapers, copy-books and books
4. A thief entered the room of my big brother and stole the clock which my brother bought yesterday
5. I have written to-day with blue ink and my sister has written with red ink
6. My brother was in the magistrate's court (in Arabic, court of peace) and there saw the advocate who was yesterday in the vineyard of my grand-father.
7. Who has seen my new house? — My mother saw it yesterday.
8. Thy father said that he waited for thee (m.) in the magistrate's court is in the Moslem quarter.
9. The tailor waited for thee (m.) in the forenoon in his shop which I have bought in the market? — It is in the kitchen
10. I have bought to-day in the market apples, grapes and nuts
11. This apple is sour and that apple is sweet
12. This nut is bigger than that nut.
13. This nut is bigger than that nut.

1. هَذِهِ السَّاعَةُ أَكْبَرُ مِنَ السَّاعَةِ الَّتِي اشْتَرَاهَا

أَخُوكَ فِي الْمَدِينَةِ 2. أَيْنَ الْجَدِيدَةِ الَّتِي وَصَفْتَهَا عَلَيَّ

الْمَائِدَةِ 3. هِيَ عَلَى الْمَائِدَةِ فِي الْمَطْبَخِ 3. هَذَا

الْإِفْخَاحُ حَامِضٌ. هُوَ أَخْضَرٌ مِنْ ذَلِكَ الَّتِي لَمْ تَفْخَاحْ

4. مَنْ رَأَى الْيَوْمَ مُدِيرَ هَذِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ 2. أَنَا رَأَيْتُهُ

الْيَوْمَ 5. هَذَا الْبَيْتُ الْجَدِيدُ أَصْغَرُ مِنْ بَيْتِ

الْعَمِّ الْقَدِيمِ 6. مَا اشْتَرَيْ أَخُوكَ فِي الدُّكَّانِ

الْجَدِيدِ 2. هُوَ اشْتَرَى هُنَاكَ كُتُبًا وَدَفَاتِرَ 7. الْبُيُوتُ

فِي هَذِهِ الْقَرْيَةِ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ بُيُوتِ تِلْكَ الْقَرْيَةِ

8. فِي كَلْبٍ أَبْيَضٍ وَكَلْبٍ أَسْوَدٍ. الْكَلْبُ الْأَبْيَضُ

أَسَمَنُ مِنَ الْكَلْبِ الْأَسْوَدِ 9. مَنْ رَأَى أَحَدَ
الْيَوْمِ 2. أَيْ رَأَيْتَهُ فِي السُّوقِ الْجَدِيدِ 10. إِبْرَاهِيمُ
أَكْبَرُ مِنْ أَحَدٍ وَأَحَدٌ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ سَلِيمٍ 11. أَنِي
كَانَ الْبَارِحَ فِي حَقْلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ

Lesson 49

1. The father of my father and the father of my mother are my grand-fathers (dual)
2. What The mother of my father and the mother of my mother are my grand-mothers (dual) and I am their (m.) grand-son
3. What has thy (m.) grand-father planted in your (m.) garden to-day? — My grand-father has planted date-palms in our garden to-day
4. Salim and his father went out from the magistrate's court and returned to their (dual) house which is in the old city
5. Selma and her mother have been in the mosque to-day.
6. My father and my mother are my parents (dual) and I am their (dual) son. My parents (dual) have other sons and daughters. Their (dual) sons are my brothers and their (dual) daughters are my sisters
7. My brother has been once in Jerusalem and twice in Haifa
8. My sister has been to-day in the zoo and there saw various vultures.
9. What is the thing that the old man has carried from the forest? — The old man has carried a bundle of firewood from there
10. Where are the new books which thou (m.) didst buy yesterday? — My big (elder) brother took them
11. My teachers and thine (m.) have been to-day in the Moslem quarter.
12. The daughters of our neighbour and his sons have been to-day in the forest which is near our village
13. Where are thy (m.) two new books and where are my two copy-books? — My two new books are in my room and thy (m.) two copy-books also are there.

Lesson 50

1. How many times has thy (m.) big (elder) brother been in Jaffa to-day? — My big brother has been there twice to-day
2. This hunter has hunted two hares to-day and slaughtered one of them (dual) and sold its meat in the market
3. This hunter always hunts in the forest which is near your (m.) village
4. Why does the child weep and (why do) the tears run from his eyes (dual)? — He weeps because of the glacial (in Arabic, of the strength of) cold.
5. Thy (m.) pupil came to me and after he saluted me said that thou (m.) didst wait for me in thy (m.) new house
6. The teacher of Zayd passed by my father and saluted him
7. Thy (m.) uncle

(on the father's side) has visited me yesterday and I shall visit him to-morrow, God willing! 8. When will thy (m.) uncle (on the mother's side) visit me? - He will visit thee (m.) in the afternoon, God willing! 9. Thy (m.) teachers have visited my teachers in the school to-day 10. Thy (m.) new houses are larger than their (m.) new houses 11. Who saw my two new houses? - I saw them (dual) 12. The two dogs of my brother are bigger than thy (m.) two dogs.

1. كِتَابُهُ الْجَدِيدَانِ فِي غُرْفَتِي الصَّغِيرَةِ 2. ابْنِ كِتَابَانَا - هُمَا فِي غُرْفَتِهِ جَدِيدَانَا 3. كَمْ كِتَابًا اشْتَرَى أَبُوكَ الْبَارِحَ فِي الدُّكَّانِ الْجَدِيدِ 4. ابْنِي اشْتَرَى الْبَارِحَ فِي هَذِهِ كِتَابَيْنِ 5. كَمْ ارْتَبَا صَادُ الصِّيَادُ الْبَارِحَ زَارَنِي الْغَائِبَةِ 6. هُوَ صَادُ الْبَارِحَ ارْتَبَانِي 7. اخوه زَارَنِي الْبَارِحَ 8. وَاَنَا سَازُورُهُ بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ 9. ابْنِي دَفْتَرَايَ 10. اخوك اخذها 11. مَنْ رَأَى الْيَوْمَ جِهَارِي جَدِيدِي 12. اخو جَارِنَا رَآهَا 13. مَعْلَمُوا الْمَدْرَسَةِ الْجَدِيدَةِ زَارُوا الْيَوْمَ مَعْلَمَيْنَا 14. هَتَانِ الْبَقْرَتَانِ اسْمُهُنِ مِنْ بَقَرَيْنَا 15. حَصَانَانَا اكْبَرُ مِنْ حَصَانَيْكُم 16. كَمْ دَفْتَرًا اشْتَرَى اخوك بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ 17. هُوَ اشْتَرَى دَفْتَرَيْنِ 18. اخُذْنَا اكْبَرُ مِنْ اخْتِكُمْ وَاخْتِكُمْ اكْبَرُ مِنْ اخْتِكُمْ

Lesson 53

1. My cow is bigger than thy (m.) cow. It is the biggest cow in this village. 2. I have two red cows and thou (m.) hast two black cows 3. My neighbour has slaughtered to-day two lambs and distributed the meat gratis among the poor of this quarter 4. Our neighbour opened a fish-shop in the market which is in the old city 5. These children are dumb and those (children) are deaf. 6. Our neighbour has a big and fat ox. It is the biggest and fattest (ox) in our village. 7. My brother Ibrahim learns in the new school. He is the smallest pupil in it 8. My big brother has two big automobiles. He bought them (dual) last year in Jerusalem 9. The lessons in this book are easy and the lessons in that book are difficult 10. These lessons are easier than those (lessons) 11. This chair is heavy and that chair is light 12. This chair is heavier than that (chair). 13. That chair is lighter than this (chair) 14. I have a new house and my brother has a new house. The house of my brother is newer than my house 15. The two dumb sisters of our neighbour have visited to-day my big sister.

1. جَمَلُهُ اكْبَرُ مِنْ جَمَلِنَا 2. حَصَانُنَا هُوَ الْجَدِيدَانِ الْاَكْبَرُ فِي هَذِهِ الْقَرْيَةِ 3. اشْتَرَى اخِي الْبَارِحَ بَقْرَتَيْنِ بَيْضَتَيْنِ 4. هَتَانِ الْبَقْرَتَانِ الْبَيْضَتَانِ 5. هَذَا التِّلْهَامُ كَسَلَانُ وَذَلِكَ التِّلْهَامُ مُجْتَهِدٌ 6. لِي جَبْرٌ اَحْمَرٌ وَلَهَا جَبْرٌ اَزْرَقٌ 7. ابْنِي اشْتَرَى صَدِيقُكَ الْخَيْرَ الْاَحْمَرَ 8. هُوَ اشْتَرَى الْخَيْرَ الْاَحْمَرَ فِي الدُّكَّانِ الْجَدِيدِ 9. الدُّرُوسُ الْيَوْمَ صَعْبَةٌ 10. هَلْ اسْهَلُ مِنْ تِلْكَ الدُّرُوسِ 11. مَنْ فَتَحَ هَذَا السُّبُلَاكُ الْاَكْبَرُ 12. تِلْهَامُ اخِي فَتَحَهُ 13. ابْنِ الْبَقَرَةِ الْبَيْضَةِ الَّتِي اشْتَرَاهَا الْبَارِحَ

البقرة البيضاء في بستان جدك 12. هذه المائدة
تقبل وتلك المائدة خفيفة 13. تلك المائدة أخف من
هذه المائدة 14. هذه المائدة أثقل من تلك المائدة

Lesson 56

1. My elder brother has two big cars and the other is a transport-car (taxi) is a passenger-car are 7 days and they are as follows: Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday and Saturday. In the day there are 24 hours; in the hour there are 60 minutes; in the 1/2 hour there are 30 minutes; in the 1/4 hour there are 15 minutes and in the 1/8 hour there are 20 minutes. As to the minute it has 60 seconds 4. In each Palestinian pound there are 100 piastres and in each piastre 10 mils 5. For how much (money) hast thou (m.) bought fo-day apples and for how much (money) hast thou (m.) bought grapes?— I have bought to-day apples for 7 piastres and grapes for 13 piastres 6. For how much (money) didst thou (m.) buy these two copy-books? I bought one of them (duo) for 6 mils and the other (I bought) for 20 mils 7. How old art thou (m.)? — I am 15 years old 8. I am 25 years old and my elder brother is 33 years old 9. I have bought 4 new books to-day and my brother has bought 12 books 10. My little brother was in Jaffa twice, in Haifa 4 times and in Jerusalem 12 times.

Page 136

1. In this street there are 25 houses and in that street there are 27 houses 2. Where hast thou (m.) learned the Arabic language? — I have learned it in an evening school 3. In this town there are 4 evening schools for teaching the labourers reading and writing 4. Does this farmer know the reading and the writing? — No, this farmer does not know reading nor writing. He is illiterate.

5. Ahmad, read what I have written on the blackboard 6. The teacher said to his pupil: Ibrahim, read what Zayd has written on the blackboard 7. In this evening school there are 56 pupils 8. The wife of our neighbour does not know (the) reading nor (the) writing. She is illiterate 9. The husband of this woman learns the Arabic language in one of the evening schools 10. My father has 12 cows and 5 camels.

1. كم تلميذا في هذه المدرسة؟ في هذه المدرسة أربعة وتسعون تلميذا 2. لجدتي ثلاثة كلاب كبيرة وخطلي كلبان 3. في هذا الكتاب ستون درهما وفي ذلك الكتاب سبعة وستون درهما 4. في هذه العرفة أربعة شبائك وفي عرفة اختي ثلاثة شبائك 5. اشتريت بعد الظهر خمسة كتب في الدكان الجديد 6. إن كم أخو جارنا؟ — 60 إن تسع عشرة سنة 7. كم مرة كان جازنا في يافا؟ — 12 كان هناك مربيان أو ثلاث مرات 11. في هذه القرية مدرستان مسائليتان

Lesson 58

1. The 10th lesson in this book is easier than the 16th lesson and the 53rd lesson is more difficult than the 11th lesson 2. This peasant ploughed his field to-day from 5 o'clock in the morning until 11 o'clock 3. My brother ploughs his field twice every day, once (in Arabic, the first time) from 6 o'clock

in the morning and once (٥ Arabic, and the other time) from 3 o'clock to 5 o'clock in the afternoon 4. A society was founded in this town to combat illiterateness 6. The peasant bought in this shop a sickle and his wife bought there a knife 7. This book is composed of three parts. In the first part there are 225 pages, in the second part there are 364 pages and in the third part there are 286 pages.

١. كِتَابُ أَخِي مُؤَلَّفٌ مِنْ جُزْئَيْنِ فِي الْجُزْءِ الْأَوَّلِ
لَا مِائَةَ وَخَمْسَ وَخَمْسُونَ صَفْحَةً وَفِي الْجُزْءِ الثَّانِي
أَرْبَعِمِائَةَ وَتِسْعَ وَثَلَاثُونَ صَفْحَةً ٢. كُنْتُ الْبَارِحَ
فِي الْفَدَسِ مِنَ السَّاعَةِ الثَّامِنَةِ صَبَاحًا إِلَى السَّاعَةِ
الثَّانِيَةِ بَعْدَ الظُّر ٣. الدَّرْسُ السَّادِسُ عَشَرَ فِي هَذَا
الْكِتَابِ أَصْبَحْتُ مِنَ الدَّرْسِ السَّابِقِ وَالثَّلَاثِينَ
وَمَتَى كَتَبْتُ أَخُوكَ دُرُوسَهُ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ ٤. هُوَ كَتَبَهَا
مِنَ السَّاعَةِ السَّادِسَةِ إِلَى السَّاعَةِ الثَّامِنَةِ مَسَاءً ٥. أَيْنَ
الْجُزْءِ الثَّلَاثُ مِنْ هَذَا الْكِتَابِ ٦. هُوَ فِي عُرْفَةِ اخْتِنَا
ه. مَا كَتَبْتُ اخْتُكَ بَعْدَ الظُّر ٧. هِيَ كَتَبَتِ الدَّرْسَ
السَّادِسَ عَشَرَ ٨. هَذَا الدَّرْسُ أَسْهَلُ مِنَ الدَّرْسِ
الثَّامِنِ وَالْمِشْرِينِ ٩. كَمْ دَرَسًا فِي هَذَا الْكِتَابِ ١٠.
فِي هَذَا الْكِتَابِ سَبْعَةٌ وَخَمْسُونَ دَرَسًا